## **HT-IDE2000 User's Guide**

**Fifth Edition** 

Copyright © 2001 by HOLTEK SEMICONDUCTOR INC. All rights reserved. Printed in Taiwan. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of HOLTEK SEMICONDUCTOR INC.

## NOTICE

The information appearing in this Data Book is believed to be accurate at the time of publication. However, Holtek assumes no responsibility arising from the use of the specifications described. The applications mentioned herein are used solely for the purpose of illustration and Holtek makes no warranty or representation that such applications will be suitable without further modification, nor recommends the use of its products for application that may present a risk to human life due to malfunction or otherwise.

Holtek reserves the right to alter its products without prior notification. For the most up-to-date information, please visit our web site at http://www.holtek.com.tw.



## Contents

Part I Integrated Development Environment1		
Chapter 1 Overview and Installation	3	
Introduction		
System Configuration		
Installation		
System requirement		
Hardware installation		
Software installation		
Chapter 2 Quick Start	11	
Chapter 3 HT-IDE2000 Menu – File/Edit/View/Tools/C	Options 15	
Start the HT-IDE2000 System		
File Menu		
Edit Menu		
View Menu		
Tools Menu		
Mask option		
Diagnose		
OTP programmer		
Library manager		
Voice/VROM editor		
Voice/Download		
LCD simulator		
Options Menu		

#### i

### Contents

Project command	
Debug command	
Directories command	29
Editor command	
Color command	30
Font command	30
Chapter 4 HT-IDE2000 Menu – Project	91
Create a New Project	
Open and Close a Project	
Manage the Source Files of a Project	
To add a source file to the project	
To delete a source file from the project	
To move a source file up or down	
Build a Project's Task Files	
To build a project task file	
To rebuild a project task file	
Assemble/Compile	
To assemble or compile a program	
Print Option Table Command	
Chapter 5 HT-IDE2000 Menu – Debug	37
Reset the HT-IDE2000 System	
To reset from the HT-IDE2000 commands	39
To reset from the target board	39
Emulation of Application Programs	40
To emulate the application program	40
To stop emulating the application program	40
To run the application program to a line	40
To directly jump to a line of an application program	41
Single Step	41
Breakpoints	42
Breakpoint features	42
Description of breakpoint items	43
How to set breakpoints	45
Trace the Application Program	47
About the trace mechanism and its requirements	47
To stop the trace mechanism	49
About the trace record format	52
Chapter 6 HT-IDE2000 Menu – Window	55
Window Menu Commands	

#### ii

Chapter 7 Simulation	
Chapter 8 Using the OTP Programmer	63
Introduction	63
Installation	64
Programming an OTP chip with the HandyWriter	65
System Messages	73

## Part II Development Language and Tools ...... 77

Chapter 9 Holtek C Language 7	79
Introduction	79
C Program Structure	80
Statements	80
Comments	80
Identifiers	81
Reserved words	81
Data types and sizes	81
Declaration	82
Constants	83
Integer constants	83
Character constants	83
String constants	83
Enumeration constants	83
Operators	84
Arithmetic operators	85
Relational operators	85
Equality operators	85
Logical operators	85
Bitwise operators	86
Assignment operators	86
Increment and decrement operators	86
Conditional operators	87
Comma operator	87
Precedence and associativity of operators	87
Type conversions	88
Program Control Flow	89
Functions	92



Classic form	
Modern form	93
Pointers and Arrays	
Pointers	
Arrays	
Structures and Unions	
Preprocessor Directives	
Predefined names	102
Holtek C Compiler Specifics	102
Using multiple souce files	102
Input/Output ports system calls	103
Interrupts	104
Difference between Holtek C and ANSI C	105
Keywords	105
Variables	105
Constants	105
Functions	105
Arrays	105
Constant variables	105
Initial value	106
Multiply/Divide/Modulus	106
Stack	
Holtek C Compiler	107
ASM calls C functions	107
Chapter 10 Assembly Language and Cross Assembler	
Notational Conventions	
Statement Syntax	
Name	
Operation	
Operand	
Comment	
Assembly Directives	115
Conditional-Assembly directives	
File control directives	116
Program directives	118
Data definition directives	122
Macro directives	
Assembly Instructions	126
Name	
Mnemonic	
Operand, operator and expression	126
Miscellaneous	

iv

## Contents

Part III Utilities	143
Chapter 13 $\mu$ C VROM Editor (HT-VDS827)	145
Introduction	
Quick Start for µC Voice Microcontrollers	
Step-by-Step guide	
Resources supported by the development system	
Quick reference	155
Using the VROM Editor	
File type	158
Creating a new .VPJ file	158
Play with sample rate	163
File menu	163
Window menu	164
Using the HT-Voice Editor	164

#### v

### Contents

New/Record command	165
Play command sample rate	166
Open command	167
Save command Voice type	169
Other commands	170
Using the HT-Binary Editor	170
Creating a new file	171
Opening a file	171
Editing	171
Saving	173
Other commands	174
	1
Chapter 14 LCD Simulator	
Introduction	
LCD Panel File	
Relationship between the panel file and the current project	
Entry situations of the HT-LCDS	
Set up the LCD Panel File	
Set the panel configurations	
Select the patterns and their positions	
Add a new pattern	
Delete a pattern	
Change the pattern	
Change the pattern position	
Simulate the LCD	
Still in LCD simulation mode when exiting from HT-IDE2000	180
In HT-LCDS environment	
Stop the simulating	181
Chapter 15 Virtual Peripheral Manager	109
Introduction	
The VPM Window	
VPM Menu	
File menu	
Function menu	
The VPM Peripherals	
LED	
Button/switch	
Seven segment display	
Quick Start Example	
Scanning light	192

vi

Part IV Programs and Application Circuits 195
Chapter 16 Input/Output Applications
Scanning Light
Circuit design 197
Program
Program description
Traffic Light
Circuit design 200
Program
Program description
Keyboard Scanner
Circuit design 204
Program
Program description
LCM
Circuit design
Program
Program description
Using an I/O Port as a Serial Application
Program
Program description
Chapter 17 Interrupt and Timer/Counter Applications 221
Electronic Piano
Circuit design
Program
Program description
Clock
Circuit design
Program
Program description
1 rogram description
Chapter 18 Parallel Port231
ROM Emulator
Circuit design
Program
Program description

#### 1: **C**: р --+ TT7 ъ 1 L -+: •+ 105

vii

Part V Appendix 237
Appendix A Reserved Words Used By Assembler       239         Registers       239         Instruction Sets       239
Appendix B Cross Assembler Error Message
Appendix C Cross Linker Error Messages
Appendix D Cross Library Error Messages
Appendix E Holtek Cross C Compiler Error Messages 255
Error Code
Warning Code
Fatal Code

viii



Part I Integrated Development Environment

Part I

## Integrated Development Environment

 $\mathbf{2}$ 



## Chapter 1

## **Overview and Installation**

The HT-IDE2000 (Holtek Integrated Development Environment) is a high performance integrated development environment designed around Holtek's series of 8-bit microcontroller ( $\mu$ C) chips. Incorporated within the system is the hardware and software tools necessary for rapid and easy development of ASIC (Application-Specific Integrated Circuit) applications based on the Holtek range of 8-bit  $\mu$ Cs.

The key component within the HT-IDE2000 system is the HT-ICE or In-Circuit Emulator, capable of emulating the Holtek 8-bit  $\mu$ C in real time, in addition to providing powerful debugging and trace features.

As for the software, the HT-IDE2000 provides a friendly workbench to ease the process of application program development, by integrating all of the software tools, such as editor, macro assembler, linker, library and symbolic debugger into a user friendly windows based environment.

In addition the HT-IDE2000 provides a software simulator which is capable of simulating the behaviour of Holtek's 8-bit  $\mu C$  range without using the HT-ICE. All fundamental functions of the HT-ICE hardware are valid for the simulator.





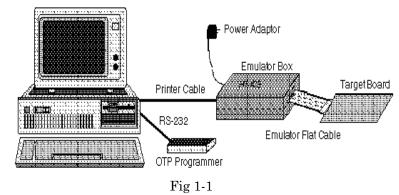
## Introduction

Some of the special features provided by the HT-IDE2000 include:

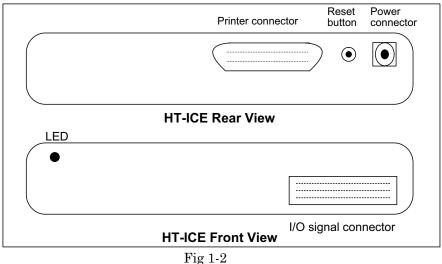
- $\rightarrow$  Emulation
  - Real-time program instruction emulation
  - On-line or off-line (stand-alone) emulation
- $\rightarrow$  Hardware
  - Easy installation and usage
  - Either internal or external oscillator
  - Breakpoint mechanism
  - Trace functions and trigger qualification supported by trace emulation chip
  - Printer port for connecting the HT-ICE to a host computer
  - $\bullet$  I/O interface card for connecting the user's application board to the HT-ICE
- $\rightarrow$  Software
  - Windows based software utilities
  - Source program level debugger (symbolic debugger)
  - Workbench for multiple source program files (more than one source progam file in one application project)
  - All tools are included for the development, debug, evaluation and generation of the final application program code (mask ROM file)
  - Library for the setting up of common procedures which can be linked at a later date to other projects.
  - Simulator can simulate and debug programs without connection to the HT-ICE hardware
  - $\bullet~\mu C$  VROM editor modifies and compresses the voice data in order to generate a proper VROM (Voice ROM) size.
  - LCD simulator simulates the behavior of the LCD panel.

**System Configuration** 

The HT-IDE2000 system configuration is shown in Fig1-1, in which the host computer is a Pentium compatible machine, with windows 95/98 or later.



- $\rightarrow$  The HT-IDE2000 system contains the following hardware components
  - The HT-ICE box contains PCBs (printed circuit board) with 1 printer port connector for connecting to the host machine, I/O signal connector and one LED, Fig 1-2.
  - I/O interface card for connecting the target board to the HT-ICE box
  - $\bullet$  Power adaptor, output 9V
  - 25-pin D-type printer cable
  - OTP programmer, gang programmer (optional)







#### → I/O interface card

The I/O interface card (Fig 1-3) is a PCB which is used to connect the HT-IDE2000 system to the user's target board. It provides the following functions:

- external clock source
- external signal trace input
- $\mu C$  pin assignment

The external clock source has two modes, RC & crystal. For use with a crystal clock, short positions 1 and 2 on Jumper JP1. Otherwise for an RC clock short positions 2 and 3, and adjust the system frequency with VR1 (Fig 1-3). Refer to the Tools/Mask Option Menu for the choice of the clock source and system frequency.

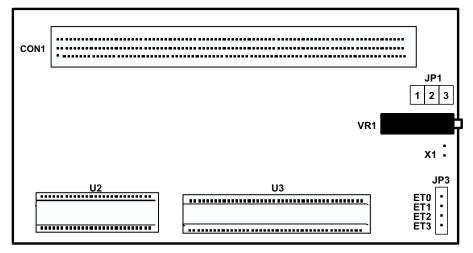


Fig 1-3

The 4 external signal trace inputs, marked as ET0 to ET3 at jumper location JP3, exist to help the user trace and digitize signals and analyse their behavior. Refer to the chapters on Breakpoint and Trace the Application Program for more information.

The  $\mu$ C pin assignments in location U2, U3 are defined in the same manner as the pin assignment of the HT48CX0 series according to the Holtek 8-bit  $\mu$ C databook. The VME connector at location CON1 is used to connect the I/O interface card to the HT-ICE.



## Installation

#### System requirement

The hardware and software requirements for installing HT-IDE2000 system are as follows:

- PC/AT compatible machine with Pentium or higher CPU
- SVGA color monitor
- $\bullet$  At least 32M RAM for well performance
- 3.5 floppy disk drive (for disk installation)
- CD ROM drive (for CD installation)
- At least 10M free disk space
- Parallel port to connect PC and HT-ICE
- MS-Windows 95/98/NT/2000

Note MS-Windows 95/98/NT/2000 are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

#### Hardware installation

• Step 1

Plug the power adapter into the power connector of the HT-ICE

• Step 2

Connect the target board to the HT-ICE by using the I/O interface card or flat cable

• Step 3

Connect the HT-ICE to the host machine using the printer cable

The LED on the HT-ICE should now be lit, if not there is an error and your dealer should be contacted.

**Caution** Exercise care when using the power adapter. Do not use a power adapter whose output voltage is not 9V, otherwise the HT-ICE may be damaged. It is strongly recommended that only the power adapter supplied by Holtek be used. First plug the power adapter to the power connector of the HT-ICE.

#### Software installation

• Step1

Insert the HT-IDE2000 CD into the CD ROM drive, the following dialog will be shown

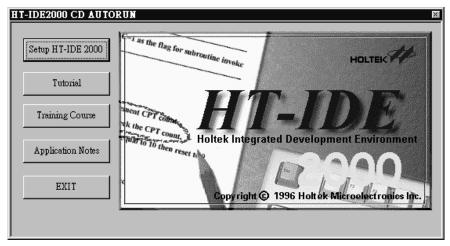


Fig 1-4

Click <Setup HT-IDE2000> button and the following dialog (Fig1-5) will be shown



Fig 1-5

• Step 2

Press the <Next> button to continue setup or press <Cancel> button to abort.





• Step 3

The following dialog will be shown to ask the user to enter a directory name.



Fig 1-6

• Step 4

Specify the path you want to install the HT-IDE2000 and click <Next> button

• Step 5

SETUP will copy all files to the specified directory

• Step 6

If the process is successful a dialog will be shown

_SETUP
Setup succeeded! You can run HT-IDE2000 Development Environment now.
( <u> </u>

Fig 1-7

• Step 7

Press button and you can run HT-IDE2000 now.

**Note** SETUP will create four subdirectories, BIN, INCLUDE, LIB, SAMPLE, under the destination directory you specified in Step 4. The BIN subdirectory contains all the system executables (EXE), dynamic link libraries (DLL) and configuration files (CFG, FMT) for all supported micro-C bodies. The INCLLUDE subdirectory contains all the include files (.H, .INC) provided by Holtek. The LIB subdirectory contains the library files (.LIB) provided by Holtek. The SAMPLE subdirectory contains some sample programs.





**Note** Before you first time run HT-IDE2000, the system will ask you for company information (Fig 1-8). Select appropriate area and fill in the company name and ID. You can ask your HT-IDE2000 provider for an ID number.

Holtek - Set Area (	Code	×
Area:	Taiwan	•
Company:	Holtek Semiconductor	Inc.
ID:	5858	OK

Fig1-8

Chapter 2

## **Quick Start**

This chapter gives a brief description of using HT-IDE2000 to develop an application project.

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 1

Create a new project

- Click on Project menu and select New command
- $\bullet$  Enter your project name and select a microcontroller from the combo box
- Click OK button and the system will ask you to setup the mask options
- Setup all mask options and click Save button

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 2

Add source program files to the project

- Create your source files by using File/New command
- $\bullet$  Write your programs and save them with your a file name, say TEST.ASM
- Click on Project menu and select Edit command
- An Edit Project dialog will ask you to add/delete files to/from the project
- Select a source file name, say TEST.ASM, and click Add button
- Click OK button after you setup all files in the project



#### → Step 3

Build your project

- Click on Project menu and select Build command
- The system will assemble/compile all source files in the project
  - If there are some errors in the programs, double click on the error message line and the system will prompt you the position where the error happened
  - If all the program files are good, the system will create a Task file and download to the HT-ICE for debug

#### → Step 4

Send Code to Holtek

- You may repeat Step 3 before you finish debugging your programs
- Click on Options menu and select Project command
- A Project Option dialog will be shown
- Check Generate .COD file box and click OK button
- Rebuild the project for creating the .COD file
- Click on Project menu and select Print Option Table command
- Send the .COD file and the Option Approved Sheet to Holtek

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 5

Programming OTP IC

- Click on Options menu and select Project command
- A Project Option dialog will be shown
- Check Generate .OTP file box and click OK button
- Rebuild the project for creating the .OTP file
- Click on Tools menu and select OTP Programmer command
- Use HT-OTP to program the OTP ICs

The Programming and data flow can be illustrated by the following diagram



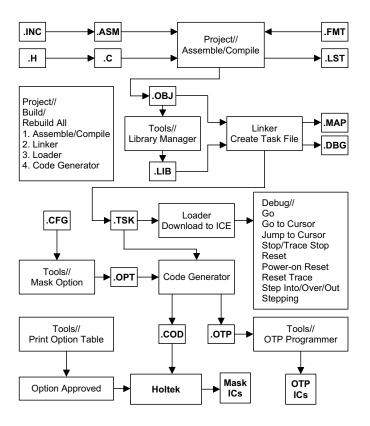


Fig 2-1



Chapter 3

# HT-IDE2000 Menu – File/Edit/View/Tools/Options

This chapter describes some of the menus and commands of the HT-IDE2000. Other menus are described in the Project, Debug and Window chapters.

Start the HT-IDE2000 System

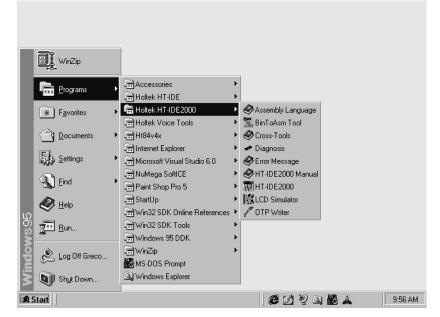


Fig 3-1



- For windows 95/98/NT/2000
  - Click Start Button, select Programs and select Holtek HT-IDE2000
  - Click the HT-IDE2000 icon
- If the last project you worked on HT-IDE2000 is in emulation mode (using HT-ICE), then Fig 3-2 will be displayed if one of the following conditions occurs.
  - No connection between the HT-ICE and the host machine or connection fails.
  - The HT-ICE is powered off.



Fig 3-2

If "YES" is selected and the connection between the HT-ICE and the host machine has been made, then Fig 3-3 is displayed, the HT-IDE2000 enters the emulation mode and the HT-ICE begins to function.



Fig 3-3

• IF the last project you work on HT-IDE2000 is in simulation mode (using Simulator), then Fig 3-4 will be displayed to indicate that HT-IDE2000 will enter the simulation mode.



Fig 3-4

The HT-IDE2000 program supports 9 menus - File, Edit, View, Project, Debug, Tools, Options, Window and Help. The following sections describe the functions and commands of each menu.



A dockable toolbar, below the menu bar (Fig 3-5), contains icons that correspond to, and assist the user with more convenient execution of frequently used menu commands. When the cursor is placed on a toolbar icon, the corresponding command name will be displayed alongside. Clicking on the icon will cause the command to be executed.

A statusbar, in the bottom line (Fig 3-5), displays the emulation or simulation present status and the result status of commands.

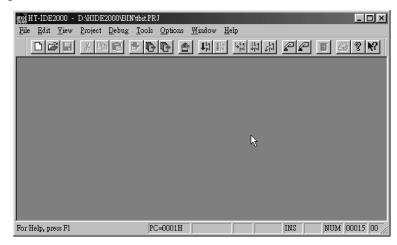


Fig 3-5

### **File Menu**

The File menu provides file processing commands, the details behind which are shown in the following list along with the corresponding toolbar icons.



• New

Create a new file

- Open Open an existing file
- Close

Close the current active file



• Save

Write the active windows data to the active file

• Save As ...

Write the active windows data to the specified file

• Save All

Write all windows data to the corresponding opened files

- Print
- Print active data to the printer
- Print Setup Setup printer
- Recent Files List the most recently opened and closed four files
- Exit
- Exit from HT-IDE2000 and return to Windows

## Edit Menu

• Undo



Cancel the previous editing operation

- Redo
  - Cancel the previous Undo operation
- Cut

Remove the selected lines from the file and place onto the clipboard

• Copy

Place a copy of the selected lines onto the clipboard

- Paste
  - Paste the clipboard information to the present insertion point
- Delete

Delete the selected information

 $\bullet \ {\rm Find}$ 

Search the specified word from the editor active buffer

• Replace

Replace the specified source word with the destination word in the editor active buffer





### View Menu

The View menu provides the following commands to control the window screen of the HT-IDE2000. (refer to Fig 3-6)

• Line

Move the cursor to the specified line (specified by line number) of the active file

• Cycle Count

Count instruction cycles accumulatively. Press the reset button to clear the cycle count. The radio buttons Hex and Dec are used to change the radix of the count, hexadecimal or decimal. The maximum cycle count is 65535.

• Toolbar

Display the toolbar information on the window. The toolbar contains 8 groups of buttons whose function is the same as that of the command in each corresponding menu item. When the mouse cursor is placed on a toolbar button, the corresponding function name will be displayed next to the button. If the mouse is clicked, the command will be executed. Refer to the corresponding chapter for the functionality of each button. The Toggle Breakpoint button will set the line specified by the cursor as a breakpoint (highlighted). The toggle action of this button will clear the breakpoint function if previously set.

• Status Bar

Displays the status bar information on the window.

stass Tbit.c - HT-IDE2000 - D:\HIDE	2000\BIN\tbit.PRJ			- 🗆 🗵
<u>File Edit View</u> Project Debug	g <u>T</u> ools <u>O</u> ptions <u>W</u> indow	/ <u>H</u> elp		
Cycle Count	66 <u>0</u> 41 41	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	₽₽∎	<b>8 %</b>
✓ Ioolbar ✓ Status Bar				
	PC=0001H		INS	NUM 00011

Fig 3-6



### **Tools Menu**

The Tools menu provides the special commands to facilitate user application debug. These commands are Mask Option, Diagnose, OTP Programmer, Library Manager, Voice tools and LCD Simulator.

5. HT-IDE2000 - D、HIDE2000、BIN	I\tbit.PRJ	
$\underline{\underline{F}ile}  \underline{\underline{E}}dit  \underline{\underline{V}}iew  \underline{\underline{P}}roject  \underline{\underline{D}}ebug$	<u>T</u> ools <u>Options</u> <u>W</u> indow	v <u>H</u> elp
	Mask Option <u>D</u> iagnose <u>O</u> TP programmer <u>L</u> ibrary Manager	HHA 22 I 6 ? ??
	Voice LCD Simulator	
	PC=0001H	INS   NUM  00011

Fig 3-7

#### Mask option

This command generates an option file used by the Build command in the Project menu. The contents of the option file depends upon the specified  $\mu$ C. This command allows options to be modified after creation of the project.

#### $\rightarrow$ Choosing the clock source

The clock source used by the HT-ICE has to be chosen when setting the  $\mu C$  options, either when creating a new project or modifying the options. The HT-ICE provides two clock sources, namely internal and external. If an external clock source is chosen the jumper JP1 must be placed in the correct position.

- For crystal mode, add a crystal to location X1 and short positions 1 and 2 of jumper JP1 on the I/O interface card.
- For RC mode, adjust the system frequency with VR1 and short positions 2 and 3 of jumper JP1 on the I/O interface card.



#### → Internal clock source

If an internal clock source is used, the system application frequency has to be specified. The HT-IDE2000 system will calculate a frequency which can be supported by the HT-ICE, one which will be the most approximate value to the specified system frequency. Whenever the calculated frequency is not equal to the specified frequency, a warning message and the specified frequency along with the calculated frequency will be displayed. Confirmation will then be required to confirm the use of the calculated frequency or to specify another system frequency. Otherwise an external clock source is the only option. No matter which kind of clock source is chosen, the system frequency must be specified.

#### Diagnose

This command (Fig 3-8) helps to check whether the HT-ICE is working correctly. There are a total of 9 items for diagnosis. Multiple items can be selected by clicking the check box and pressing the Test button, or press the Test All button to diagnose all items. These items are listed below.

•  $\mu$ C resource option space

Diagnose the uC options space of the HT-ICE.

• Code space

Diagnose the program code memory of the HT-ICE.

• Trace space

Diagnose the trace buffer memory of the HT-ICE.

Data space

Diagnose the program data memory of the HT-ICE.

• System space

Diagnose the system data memory of the HT-ICE.

• I/O EV 0

Diagnose the I/O EV-chip in socket 0 of the HT-ICE.

• I/O EV 1

Diagnose the I/O EV-chip in socket 1 of the HT-ICE.

• I/O EV 2

Diagnose the I/O EV-chip in socket 2 of the HT-ICE.

• I/O EV 3

Diagnose the I/O EV-chip in socket 3 of the HT-ICE.





Options	<u>}_</u>	
uc resource option space		
Code space		
Trace space		
Data space		
System space		
□ IO EV <u>1</u>		
□ IO EV <u>2</u>		
□ IO EV <u>3</u>		
Test <u>A</u> ll <u>T</u> est		Close

Fig 3-8

#### **OTP programmer**

The OTP (One Time Programmable) programmer supports functions for programming the OTP ICs. Refer to the chapter on usage of the HT48RX0 OTP programmer. The function of this command is the same as the program-item icon OTP writer in the HT-IDE2000 group.

#### Library manager

The Library Manager command, in Fig 3-9, supports the library functions. Program codes used frequently can be compiled into library files and then included in the application program by using the Project command in the Options menu. (Refer to the Linker options item in Options menu, Project command). The functions of Library Manager are:

- Create a new library file or modify a library file
- Add/Delete a program module into/from a library file
- Extract a program module from a library file, and create an object file



Chapter 12 gives more details about these functions.

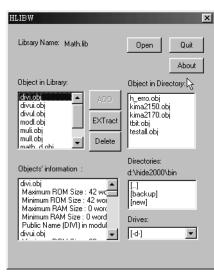


Fig 3-9

#### Voice/VROM editor

The VROM. Editor, in Fig 3-10 provides the following functions for  $\mu C$  voice

- Select the voice resource files with format .WAV or .PCM
- Modify the voice resource files
- Compress the voice resource files to a .VOC file to reduce the reaquired voice ROM size
- Modify the binary code if the VROM contains a voice program

Refer to chapter 13 for more details.



Fig 3-10

#### Voice/Download

This command downloads the contents of a specified voice data file .VOC to the HT-ICE for emulation. It also uploads from the HT-ICE VROM saving the data to a specified .VOC file. Fig 3-11 displays the dialogue box which shows the name of the downloaded voice file .VOC, which was generated by the VROM Editor. The size box displays the voice ROM size in bytes for the current project's microcontroller. When uploading, a different file name from the project name may be specified to save the contents of the HT-ICE voice RAM. Ensure that the voice ROM file .VOC has been generated by the VROM Editor before downloading.



Fig 3-11

#### LCD simulator

The LCD simulator HT-LCDS, provides a mechanism to simulate the output of the LCD driver. According to the designed patterns and the control programs, the HT-LCDS displays the patterns on the screen in real time. Chapter 14 gives more details on the LCD simulator.

### **Options Menu**

The Options menu (Fig 3-12) provides the following commands which can set the working parameters for other menus and commands.

#### **Project command**

The Project command sets the default parameters used by the Build command in the Project menu. During development, the project options may be changed according to the needs of the application. According to the options set, the HT-IDE2000 will generate a proper task file for these options when the Build command of the Project menu is issued. The dialog box (Fig 3-13) is used for setting the options of the Project.



**Note** Before issuing the Build command, ensure that the project options are set correctly.



Fig 3-12

Project Option	X			
Micro <u>C</u> ontroller HT48C30	OK			
Mode	Cancel			
© Deb <u>ug</u> C <u>R</u> elease	Help			
Generate St <u>a</u> nd-alone Code				
Generate .COD file				
Generate .OTP file				
Select OTP chip: HT48R30/HT48R31/HT48R32	7			
Assembler Options				
Define Symbol				
🗖 Generate listing file				
Linker Options				
Libraries				
Section address				
☐ Generate <u>M</u> ap File				

Fig 3-13

• Microcontroller

The  $\mu C$  name of this project. Use a scroll arrow to browse the available  $\mu C$  names and select the appropriate one.

• Mode

The processing mode of the project. The Debug mode is used during the development process. The Release mode is the same as the Debug mode except that there is no debugging information file in this mode. In the Debug mode, the contents of the source files will be displayed on the active window when the Build command of the Project menu has been executed (refer to the chapter on Build a project s task files). In Release mode, the deassembled instructions will be displayed on the Program window of the Window menu (refer to the chapter on Commands of the Window menu). There is no symbol in this window due to lack of debugging information.

• Generate stand-alone code

Check this box to generate the stand-alone code. If the stand-alone code is generated, the user can emulate the application program in the off-line mode after loading to the HT-ICE.

• Generate .COD file

Check this box to generate the .COD file. This file will be sent to Holtek for manufacturing the masked ROM ICs, after the program emulation and debugging tasks are completed. The OTP programmer also needs this file.

• Generate .OTP file

Check this box to generate the .OTP file. Refer to Chapter 8 for more details on using the Holtek (OTP) Programmer. The .OTP file contains the data to be programmed into the OTP chip by using HT-OTP and the OTP programmer.

• Assembler options

The command line options of the HASM cross assembler. Define symbol allows user to define value for the specified symbol which is used in the assembly program. The syntax is as follows:

```
symbol1[=value1] [,symbol2 [=value2] [,...]
```

for example:

```
debugflag=1, newver=3
```

The check box of the Generate listing file is used to check if the source program listing file has been generated.

• Linker options

To specify the options of the HLINK cross linker. Libraries are used to specify the library files refered by HLINK. For example:

libfile1, libfile2

Section addresses are used to set the ROM/RAM address of the specified sections, for example:

codesec=100, datasec=40

The check box of the Generate map file is used to check if the map file of HLINK is generated.

#### **Debug command**

This command sets the options used by the Debug menu (Chapter 5 HT-IDE2000 menu - Debug). The dialog box (Fig 3-14) lists all the Debug options with check boxes. By selecting the options and pressing the OK button, the Debug menu can then obtain these options during the debugging process.

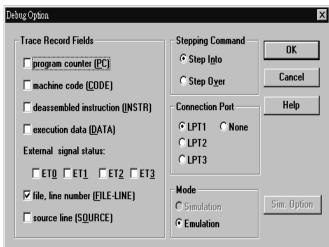


Fig 3-14

• Trace record fields

This location specifies the information to be displayed when issuing the Trace List command, contained within the Window menu. For each source file instruction, the information will be displayed in the same order as that of the items in the dialog box, from top to the bottom. If no item has been selected, the next selected item will be moved forward. The default trace list will display the file name and line number only. The de-assembled instruction is obtained from the machine code, and the source line is obtained from the source file. The execution data is Read data if the execution is a read operation only, and it is Write data if the execution is a write only or read and write operation. The external signal status has no effect if the simulation mode is selected.

• Stepping command

Selects the automatic call procedure step option, namely Step Into or Step Over. Only one option can be selected.

Connection port

Selects the PC connection port for the HT-ICE. One PC parallel port, LPT1, LPT2 or LPT3 can be selected for connection to the HT-ICE. The connection port has no effect if the simulation mode is selected.

• Mode

Selects the HT-IDE2000 working mode as either simulation or emulation mode. If the HT-ICE is connected to the host machine and powered on, the HT-IDE2000 can be selected to be either in emulation or simulation mode.



### **Directories command**

The command sets the default search path and directories for saving files. (Fig 3-15)

Directories		×
<u>E</u> xecutable Files Path	C:\HT-IDE\BIN;	OK
Include Files Path	C:\HT-IDE\INCLUDE;	Cancel
Library Files Path	C:\HT-IDE\LIB;	Help
<u>O</u> utput Files Path	C:\MICRO_P8\HTEST\TSTLINK	]



• Executable files path

The search path referred to by the HT-IDE2000 when the executable files are called.

• Include files path

The search path referred to by the HASM to search for the included files.

• Library files path

The search path referred to by the  $\operatorname{HLINK}$  to search for the library files.

• Output files path

The directory for saving the output files of the HASM (.obj, .lst) and HLINK (.tsk, .map, .dbg)

#### **Editor command**

This command sets the editor options such as tab size and Undo command count. The Save Before Assemble option will save the file before assembly. The Maximum Undo Count is the maximum allowable counts of consecutive Undo operations.

Editor Option	×
Number of <u>T</u> ab Stops:	ОК
Maximum Undo Count: 100	Cancel
<b>⊠</b> Sa <u>v</u> e Before Assemble	Help

Fig 3-16

റ	n
2	ч
-	v



## Color command

This command sets the foreground and backgroud colors for the specified line. From the available options (Fig 3-17), Text Selection is used for the Edit menu, Current line, Breakpoint Line, Trace Line and Stack Line are for the Debug menu and Error line is for the HASM output.

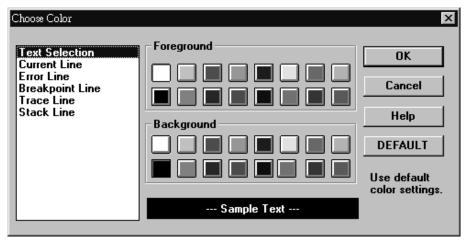


Fig 3-17

## Font command

This command will change the displayed fonts.



# Chapter 4

# HT-IDE2000 Menu – Project

The HT-IDE2000 provides an example Project, which will assist first time users in quickly familiarizing themselves with project development. It should be noted that from the standpoint of the HT-IDE2000 system, a working unit is a project with each user application described by a unique project.

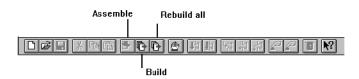
When developing an HT-IDE2000 application for the first time, the development steps as described earlier, are recommended.

**Note** When setting the project's options, during development it is recommended to select the Debug Mode, which is the default mode.

HINDE H	T-IDE2	2000 -	D:\HIDE:	2000\BIN	Ntbit.PR	J				L.	. DX
File	<u>E</u> dit	⊻iew	Project	Debug	<u>T</u> ools	Options	Window	<u>H</u> elp			
	<u>B</u>		<u>B</u> uil	n  e mble/Co:	npile		Ctrl- Shif Alt+	+F8	PP	9	§ <b>N</b> ?
				t Option i							
			<u>2</u> D:' <u>3</u> D:'	HIDE20	DO\SAM DO\proje	tbit.PRJ PLEVdemo ct\t495.PR ct\t481otp	J				
					PC	=0001H			INS	NUM	0001( //

Fig 4-1





# **Create a New Project**

In the Project menu (Fig 4-1), select the New command to create a new project. In this command, the user needs to key in or select two pieces of information for the new project, namely the Project Name and the Micro Controller (Fig 4-2). The user may browse all directories and all existing projects and select one of them (to overwrite the old project) and to choose one of the available Microcontrollers.

#### **Note** The project name is a file name with the extension .PRJ.

New Project			x
Project <u>N</u> ame		<u>B</u> rowse	ОК
Micro <u>C</u> ontroller	HT47C20	•	Cancel
			Help

Fig 4-2

# **Open and Close a Project**

The HT-IDE2000 can work with only one project at a time, which is the opening project, at any time. If a project is to be worked upon, the project should first be opened, by using the Open command of the Project menu (Fig 4-1). Then, insert the project name directly or browse the directories and select a project name. Use the Close command to close the project.

Note When opening a project, the current project is closed automatically. Within the development period, i.e during editing, setting options and debugging etc. ensure that the project is in the open state. This is shown by the displaying of the project name of the opening project on the title of the HT-IDE2000 window. Otherwise, the results are unpredictable. The HT-IDE2000 will retain the opening project information if the system exits from the HT-IDE2000 without closing the opening project. This project will be opened automatically the next time the HT-IDE2000 is run.



# Manage the Source Files of a Project

Use the Edit command to add or remove source program files from the opened project. The order, from top to bottom, of each source file in the list box, is the order of the input files to the Cross Linker. The Cross Linker processes the input files according to the order of these files in the box. Two buttons, namely [Move Up] and [Move Down], can be used to adjust the order of a source file in the project. Fig 4-3 is the dialog box of the Project menu's Edit command.

Edit Project		×
File Name: ad31_isr.asm adpcm.asm bank1.asm bank2.asm demo.asm idcdechk.asm initad3.asm keyboard.c List Files of <u>Type</u> : Source Files(*.asm;*.c)	Directories: c:\ht-ide\sample c:\ ht-ide sample Drives: c: ms-dos_6	OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp
Files in project: C:\HT-IDE\SAMPLE\ADPCM. C:\HT-IDE\SAMPLE\T.ASM	ASM	<u>A</u> dd Delete Move Up Move Do <u>wn</u>

Fig 4-3

#### To add a source file to the project

- Type the source file name into the text box of the File Name in the Edit dialog box or ...
- Choose the source file type and browse the List Files.
- Choose the drive and directory where the source files are located using the browse Drives and Directories items
- Choose a source file name from the list box below the File Name item
- Double-click the selected file name or choose the Add button to add the source files to the project

When the selected source file has been added, this file name is displayed on the list box of the Files in project.

### To delete a source file from the project

- Choose the file to be deleted from the project
- Click the Delete button

#### To move a source file up or down

- Choose the file to be moved in the list box (Files in project), by moving the cursor to this file and clicking the mouse button
- Click the [Move Up] button or the [Move Down] button

# **Build a Project's Task Files**

Be sure that the following tasks have been completed before building a new project:

- The project has been opened
- The project options have all been set
- The project source files have been added
- The  $\mu$ C options have been set (refer to the Tools menu chapter)

There are two commands related to the building of a project file, the Build command and the Rebuild All command.

The Project menu's Build command performs the following operations:

- Assemble or compile all the source files of the current project, by calling the Cross Assembler or C compiler depends on the file extension .Asm or .C
- Link all the object files generated by the HASM or C compiler, and generate a task file and a debugging file if the project is in the debug mode (please refer to Options menu, Project command)
- Load the task file into the HT-ICE if it is powered-on
- Display the source program of the execution entry point on the active window (the HT-IDE2000 refers to the source files, the task file and the debugging file for emulation)

**Note** Deleting the source files from the project does not actually delete the file but refers to the removal of the file information from the project.

- **Note** The Build command may or may not execute the above tasks as the execution is dependent on the creation date/time of all corresponding files. The rules are:
  - If the creation date/time of a source file is later than that of its object file, then the Assembler or C compiler is called to assemble, compile this source file and to generate a new object file.
  - If one of the task's object files has a later creation date/time than that of the task file, then the Linker is called to link all object files of this task and generate a new task file.

The Build command downloads the task file into the HT-ICE automatically whether there is an action or not.

The Rebuild All command carries out the same task as the Build command. The difference is that the Rebuild All command will execute the task immediately without first checking the creation date/time of the project files.

The result message of executing a Build or Rebuild All command are displayed on the active window. If an error occurs in the processing procedure, the actions following it are skipped, and no task file is generated, and no download is performed.

## To build a project task file

- Click the Open command of the Project menu to open the project
- Click either the Build command of the Project menu or the Build button on the toolbar (Fig 4-1) to start building a project

## To rebuild a project task file

- Click the Open command of the Project menu to open the project
- Click either the Rebuild All command of the Project menu or the Rebuild all button on the toolbar (Fig 4-1) to start building a project

Once the project task has been built successfully, emulation and debug of the application program can begin (refer to the HT-IDE2000 menu - Debug chapter).

## Assemble/Compile

To verify the integrity of application programs, this command can be used to assemble or compile the source code and display the result message in the output window.



#### To assemble or compile a program

- Use the File menu to open the source program file to be assembled or compiled
- Either select the Assemble/compile command of the Project menu or click the Assemble button on the toolbar to assemble/compile this program file

If the opened file has an .asm file extension name, the Cross Assembler will execute the assembly process. If the file has a .C extension then the Holtek C compiler will compile the program.

If no errors are detected, an object file with extension .OBJ is generated and stored in the directory which is specified in the Output Files Path (refer to Options menu, Directories command). If an error occurs and a corresponding message displayed on the output window, one of the following commands can be used to move the cursor to the error line :

- Double-click the left button of the mouse or
- Select the error message line on the output window, and press the <Enter> key

# **Print Option Table Command**

This command will print the current active option file to the specified printer. A printer may be selected where the options file is to be printed out. It is recommended to use a different printer port from the port which is connected to the HT-ICE.

If both the printer and the HT-ICE are using the same printer port, issuing this command will cause the loss of all debug information and corresponding data. After the printing job has finished, the user should proceed to the very beginning of the development procedure and use the Build command of the Project menu if further emulation/debugging of the application program is required.





# Chapter 5

# HT-IDE2000 Menu – Debug

In the development process, the repeated modification and testing of source programs is an inevitable procedure. The HT-IDE2000 provides many tools not only to facilitate the debugging work, but also to reduce the development time. Included are functions such as single stepping, symbolic breakpoints, automatic single stepping, trace trigger conditions, etc.

After the application program has been successfully constructed in the debug mode, (refer to the chapter on Build a project's task files) the first execution line of the source program is displayed and highlighted in the active window (Fig 5-1). The HT-IDE2000 is now ready to accept and execute the debug commands.

HT HT-IDE	2000 <b>-</b> D·I	HIDE2000	11S & MPI	Eldemo F	PI. IT	lemo e	eml						- 🗆 🛛
2000	dit <u>V</u> iew	Project	Debug		_		indow	/ <u>H</u> e	elp			-	- 8 ×
	<b>B</b>	X Ba		5  G-	à [		Ļ۱.	即		\$1 <b>\$</b>		- - -	₹ <b>№</b> ?
count3	db	2				1				×			×
loop	db	2				-	_	00:	FFFF		MPO	= 16H	
loopl	db	2						01:	FFFF		MP1	= 00H	
lamp	db	?						02:	FFFF		ACC	= 7FH	•
code	.sec	ction	at O	'code'				03:	FFFF				
	ORG	00H						04:	FFFF				
	jmp	start						05:	FFFF		# <b>9</b>		×
	ORG	04H						06:	FFFF			tl :[23B	
	jmp	int_s	ъ					07:	FFFF			t2 :[231	
	ORG	08H								-		t3 :[24	
L	clr	tmr0c.«	1		;		-		_	النے ا		.[231	ц <u>т</u> т, ст
						►							
× Socket	1: ID=	ו-סאע בר	11				_	_	<u>,</u>	0000	280F	JMP	
	ad D:\H			Fldemo	דיצע ו	00%				0001	0000	NOP	
	g debug				1.011 2					0002	0000	NOP	
	E2000\S/								-1 15	0003	0000	NOP	
				-				-	-	0004	289C	JMP	
Total	error =	0							<b>-</b> 1	0005	0000	NOP	<b>_</b>
			[			(		₽	- 010				
For Help, pr	ess F1			PC=000	1H					INS	N	UM 0001	B 001 //

Fig 5-1

# **Reset the HT-IDE2000 System**

There are 4 kinds of reset methods in the HT-IDE2000 system:

- Power-on reset (POR) by plugging in the power adapter or pressing the reset button on the HT-ICE
- Reset from the target board
- Software reset command in the HT-IDE2000 Debug menu (Fig 5-2)
- Software power-on reset command in the HT-IDE2000 Debug menu (Fig 5-2)

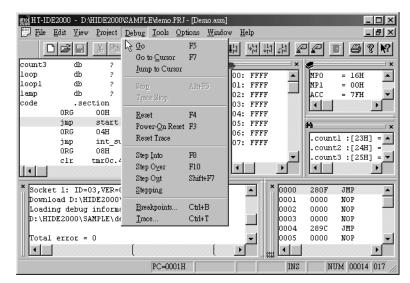
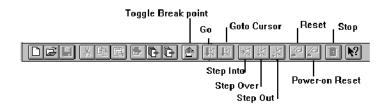


Fig 5-2





Reset Item	Power-On Reset	Target Board Reset	Software Reset Command	Software Power-On Reset Com- mand
Clear Registers	(*)	(*)	(*)	(*)
Clear Options	Yes	No	No	No
Clear PD, TO	Yes	No	No	Yes
PC Value	(**)	0	0	0
Emulation Stop	(**)	No(***)	Yes	Yes
Check Stand-Alone	Yes	No	No	No
		<b>T</b> 11 <b>F</b> 1		

The effects of the above 4 types of reset are listed in table 5-1.

Table 5-1

- Note (\*): Refer to the Data Book of the corresponding  $\mu C$  for the effects of registers under the different resets.
  - (\*\*): After power-on reset, the  $\mu C$  will check if it is in the stand-alone mode.

If so, the  $\mu C$  will start emulating the application program, otherwise the PC value is 0 and the emulation stops.

- (\*\*\*): If the reset is from the target board, the  $\mu$ C will start emulating the application after the reset is completed.
- PC program counter
- PD power down flag
- TO time out flag

#### To reset from the HT-IDE2000 commands

- Either choose the Reset command from Debug menu or click the Reset button on the toolbar to exectute a software reset
- Either choose the Power-on Reset command from the Debug menu or click the Power-on Reset button to execute a software power on reset

#### To reset from the target board

The target board circuit can take advantage of the  $\mu$ \_RES pin (pin 03-C) on the DIN connector to design a  $\mu$ C reset button. The effect of this reset is listed in table 5-1.

# **Emulation of Application Programs**

After the application program has been successfully written and assembled in the debug mode the Build or Rebuild command should be executed. If successful the first executable line of the source program will be displayed and highlighted on the active window (Fig 5-1). At this point, emulation of the application program can begin by using the HT-IDE2000 debug commands.

**Note** During emulation of an application program, the corresponding project has to be open.

## To emulate the application program

• Choose the Go command from the Debug menu or press the hot key F5 or press the Go button on the toolbar

Other windows can be activated during emulation. The HT-IDE2000 system will automatically stop the emulation if a break condition is met. Otherwise, it will continue emulating until the end of the application program. The Stop button on the toolbar is illuminated with a red color while the HT-ICE is in emulation. Pressing this button will stop the emulation process.

#### To stop emulating the application program

There are three methods to stop the emulation, shown as follows:

- Set the breakpoints before starting the emulation
- Choose the Stop command of the Debug menu or press the hot key Alt+F5
- Press the Stop button on the toolbar

#### To run the application program to a line

The emulation may be stopped at a specified line when debugging a program. The following methods provide this function. All instructions between the current point and the specified line will be executed except the conditional skips. Note however that the program may not stop at the specified line due to conditional jumps or other situations.

- Move the cursor to the stopped line (or highlight this line)
- Choose the Go to Cursor command of the Debug menu or press the hot key F7 or press the Goto Cursor button on the toolbar

#### To directly jump to a line of an application program

It is possible to jump directly to a line, if the result of executed instructions between the current point and the specified line, are not important. This command will not change the contents of data memory, registers and status except for the program counter. The specified line is the next line to be executed.

- Move the cursor to the appropriate line or highlight this line
- Choose Jump to Cursor command of the Debug menu

## Single Step

The execution results of some instructions in the above section may be viewed and checked. It is also possible to view the execution results one instruction at a time, i.e., in a step-by-step manner. The HT-IDE2000 provides two step modes, namely manual mode and automatic mode.

In the manual mode, the HT-IDE2000 executes exactly one step command each time the single-step command is executed. In the automatic mode, the HT-IDE2000 executes single step commands continuously until the emulation stop command is issued, using the Stop command of the Debug menu. In the automatic mode, all user specified breakpoints are discarded and the step rate can be set from FAST, 0.5, 1, 2, 3, 4 to 5 seconds. There are 3 step commands, namely Step Into, Step Over and Step Out in each mode.

- The Step Into command executes exactly one instruction at a time, however upon encountering a CALL procedure, will enter the procedure and stop at the first instruction.
- The Step Over command executes exactly one instruction at a time, however upon encountering a CALL procedure, will stop at the next instruction after the CALL instruction instead of entering the procedure. All instructions of this procedure will have been executed and the register contents and status may have changed.
- The Step Out command is only used when inside a procedure. It executes all instructions between the current point and the RET instruction (including RET), and stops at the next instruction after the CALL instruction.
- **Note** The Step Out command should only be used when the current pointer is within a procedure or otherwise unpredictable results may happen.



The two step commands, Step Into and Step Over, in the automatic mode are set using the Debug sub-menu of the Options menu

- To start automatic single step mode Choose the Stepping command from the Debug menu also choose the stepping speed (the step command is set in the Debug command from the Options menu)
- To end automatic single step mode Choose the Stop command from the Debug menu
- To change automatic single step command for the automatic mode
  - Choose the Debug command from the Options menu
  - Choose the Step Into or the Step Over command in the Stepping command box
- To start Step Into

Choose the Step Into command from the Debug menu or press the hot key F8 or press the Step Into button on the toolbar

- To start Step Over Choose the Step Over command of the Debug menu or press the hot key F10 or press the Step Over button on the toolbar
- To start Step Out Choose the Step Out command of the Debug menu or press the hot key Shift+F7 or press the Step Out button on the toolbar

# **Breakpoints**

The HT-IDE2000 provides a powerful breakpoint mechanism which accepts various forms of conditioning including program address, source line number and symbolic breakpoint, etc.

## **Breakpoint features**

The following are the main features of the HT-IDE2000 breakpoint mechanism:

- At most 3 breakpoints with equal priority can take effect at any instant
- Any breakpoint will be recorded in the breakpoints list box after it is set, however this breakpoint may not be immediately effective. It can be set to be effective later, as long as it is not deleted, i.e.still in the breakpoints list box.

- It is acceptable to add at most 20 breakpoints to the list box simultaneously. At least one breakpoint should be deleted first, if a 21st breakpoint is to be added.
- Breakpoints of address or data, in binary form with don't-care bits, are permitted.
- When an instruction is set to be an effective breakpoint, the HT-ICE will stop at this instruction, but will not execute it, i.e. this instruction will become the next one to be executed. Although an instruction is an effective breakpoint, the HT-ICE may not stop at this instruction due to execution flow or conditional skips. If an effective breakpoint is in the Data Space (RAM), the instruction that matches this conditional breakpoint data will always be executed. The HT-ICE will stop at the next instruction.

## Description of breakpoint items

A breakpoint consists of the following descriptive items. It is not necessary to set all items, Fig 5-3:

• Space

The location of the breakpoint, either Program Code space or Data space.

Location

The actual location of the breakpoint. The next paragraph will give the location format.

• Content

The data content of breakpoint. This item is effective only when the Space is assigned to the Data space. The Read and Write check box are used for executing conditions of the breakpoint.

• Externals

External signal breakpoint. There are 4 external signals, ET0, ET1, ET2 and ET3 at location JP3 on the I/O interface card.

#### $\rightarrow$ Format of description items - Location

The allowed formats of Location items are:

• Absolute address (in code space or data space) with 4 format types, namely decimal, hexadecimal (suffix with "H" or "h", binary and don't-care bits. For example

#### 20, 14h, 00010100b, 10xx0011

represents decimal 20, hexadecimal 14h, binary 00010100b and don't-care bits 4 and 5 respectively.

**Note** Don't-care bits must be in binary format.

• Line number with or without source file name, the format is:

```
[source_file_name!].line_number
```

where the *source\_file\_name* is a name of the optional source file. If there is no file name, the current active file is assumed. The exclamation point ! is necessary only when a source file name is specified. The dot . must prefix the line number which is decimal. Example:

```
C:\HIDE\USER\GE.ASM!.42
```

sets the breakpoint at the 42nd line of the file GE.ASM in directory \HIDE\USER of drive C. Example:

.48

sets the breakpoint at the 48th line of the current active file.

• Program symbol with or without the source file name. The format is

#### [source\_file\_name!].symbol\_name

All are the same as the line number location format except that the line\_number is replaced with symbol\_name. The following progam symbols are acceptable:

- Label name
- Section name
- Procedure name
- Dynamic data symbols defined in data section

#### $\rightarrow$ Format of description items - Content and external signals

The format of the content and external signals have four digital number options, similar to the format of Location absolute address. These four types of number are decimal, hexadecimal, binary and don't-care bits.





#### → Format of breakpoints list box

The Breakpoints list box contains all the breakpoints that have been added, including effective breakpoints and non-effective breakpoints. The Add button should be used to add new breakpoints to the list box, and the Delete button to remove breakpoints from the list box. The format of each breakpoint in the list box is as follows:

<status> {<space and read/write>, <location>, <data content>, <external signal>}

where <status> is effective status. "+" is effective (enabled) and "-" is non-effective (disabled). <space and read/write> is the space type and operating mode. "C" is the code space, "D/R" is the data space with read, "D/W" is the data space with write, "D/RW" is the data space with read and write.

<location>, <data content> and <external signal> have the same data format as the input form respectively.

#### How to set breakpoints

There are two methods to set/enable a breakpoint, one is by using the Breakpoint command from the Debug menu, the other is by using the Toggle Breakpoint button on the toolbar. The rules of the breakpoint mechanism are as follows:

- If the breakpoint to be set is not in the breakpoint list box (Fig 5-3), then the descriptive items must be designated first, then added to the breakpoint list box.
- As long as the breakpoint exists in the list box, it can be made effective by Enabling the breakpoint if it fails to be initially effective.
- Press the OK button for confirmation. Otherwise, all changes here will not be effective.
- When using the Toggle Breakpoint button on the toolbar, the cursor should first be moved to the breakpoint line, and then the Toggle Breakpoint button pressed. If an effective breakpoint is to be changed to a non-effective breakpoint, this can be achieved by merely pressing the Toggle breakpoint button.





## $\rightarrow$ To add a breakpoint

• Choose the Breakpoint command from the Debug menu (or press the hot key Ctrl+B)

A breakpoint dialog box is displayed (Fig 5-3)

- Designate the descriptive items of the breakpoint
  - Set Space, Location items

Set Content item and Read/Write check box if Space is the data space Set External signals if necessary

- Press the Add button to add this breakpoint to the Breakpoint list box.
- Press the OK button to confirm
- Note If the total count of the effective breakpoints is less than 3, the newly added one will take effect automatically after it has been added.If the breakpoints list box is full, with 20 breakpoints, the Add button is disabled and no more breakpoints can be added.

Breakpoint		×
Space:	⊙ Co <u>d</u> e C Da <u>t</u> a	OK
L <u>o</u> cation:	20	Cancel
Content:		Help
	□ read □ write	
E <u>x</u> ternals:	xxxx	
Break <u>p</u> oints:	+ {C,C:\HT-IDE\SAMPLE\T1.ASM!.11,xxxxxxx,xxxx} + {D/R,C:\HT-IDE\SAMPLE\T1.ASM!.15,2,xxxx} + {C,c:\ht-ide\sample\t2.asm!.10,xxxxxxx,xxxx} - {C,20,xxxxxxxx,xxxx}	Add Delete
		Disable
		<u>C</u> lear All

Fig 5-3

## $\rightarrow$ To delete a breakpoint

 $\bullet$  Choose the Breakpoint command from the Debug menu or press the hot key Ctrl+B

A breakpoint dialog box is displayed (Fig 5-3)

- Choose or highlight the breakpoint to be deleted from the breakpoint list box
- Press the Delete button to delete this breakpoint from the breakpoints list box
- Press the OK button to confirm



## → To delete all breakpoints

 $\bullet$  Choose the Breakpoint command from the Debug menu or press the hot key Ctrl+B

A breakpoint dialog box is displayed (Fig 5-3)

- Choose the Clear All button to delete all breakpoints from the breakpoints list box
- Press the OK button to confirm

#### → To enable (disable) a breakpoint

 $\bullet$  Choose the Breakpoint command from the Debug menu or press the hot key Ctrl+B

A breakpoint dialog box is displayed (Fig 5-3)

- Choose the disabled (enabled) breakpoint from the breakpoint list box
- Press the Enable (Disable) button, to enable or disable this breakpoint
- Press the OK button to confirm

# **Trace the Application Program**

The HT-IDE2000 provides a powerful trace mechanism which records the execution processes and all relative information when the HT-IDE2000 is emulating the application program. The trace mechanism provides qualifiers to filter specified instructions, and trigger conditions in order to stop the trace recording. It also provides a method to record a specified count of the trace records before or after a trigger point.

**Note** When the HT-IDE2000 starts emulating (refer to the section on Emulation of the Application Programs), the trace mechanism will begin to record the executing instructions and relative information automatically, but not vice versa.

#### About the trace mechanism and its requirements

The basic requirement for initializing the trace mechanism is to set the Trace Mode with or without Qualify. The Trace Mode defines the trace scope of the application program and Qualify defines the filter conditions of the trace recording.

The available Trace Modes are

• Normal

Sets the trace scope to all application programs and is the default mode.

• Trace Main

Sets the trace scope to all application programs except the interrupt service routine programs.

• Trace INT

Sets the trace scope to all interrupt service routine programs.

According to Qualify, the trace mechanism decides which instructions and what corresponding information should be recorded in the trace buffer during the emulation process. The rule is that an instruction will be recorded if its information and status satisfy one of the enabled qualifiers. The format of Qualify is the same as that of the breakpoint. If all program steps are required to be recorded, then No Qualify is needed (don't set the Qualify). The default is No Qualify.

In contrast to the Trace Mode and Qualify, which specify the conditions of trace recording, both the Trigger Mode and Forward Rate specify the conditions to stop the trace recording.

The Trigger Mode specifies the kind of trigger point, and is a standard used to determine the location of the stop trace point. The Forward Rate specifies the trace scope between the trigger point and the stop trace point.

The available Trigger Modes are:

• No Trigger

No stopping of the trace recording condition. This is the default case.

• Trigger at Condition A

The trigger point is at condition A.

• Trigger at Condition B

The trigger point is at condition B.

• Trigger at Condition A or B

The trigger point is at either condition A or condition B.

• Trigger at Condition B after A

The trigger point is at condition B after condition A has occurred.

- Trigger when meeting condition A for k times The trigger point is when condition A has occurred k times.
- Trigger at Condition B after meeting A for k times

The trigger point is at condition B after condition A has occurred for k times.



Condition A and Condition B specify the trigger conditions. The format of condition A or B is the same as that of the breakpoint.

The Loop Count specifies the number of occurrences of the specified condition A. It is used only when the Trigger Mode is from one of the last two modes in the above list.

The Forward Rate specifies the approximate rate of the trace recording information between the trigger point and stop trace point in the whole trace buffer. The trigger point divides the trace buffer into two parts, before and after trigger point. The forward rate is used to limit the trace recording scope after the trigger point. The percentage is adjustable between 0 and 100%.

**Note** It is not necessary for the trace recording scope to be equal to the forward rate. If a breakpoint is met before reaching the trace recording scope or a trace stop command (refer to: To stop the trace mechanism) is issued, the trace recording will be stopped.

A Qualify list box records and displays all qualifiers used by the Trace Mode. Up to 20 qualifiers can be added into the list box and and up to 6 qualifiers can be effective. A Qualifier can be disabled or deleted from the list box. The format of each qualifier in the Qualify list box has the same format as the breakpoint in the breakpoint list box (refer to the section on Breakpoints, Format of breakpoints list box)

#### To stop the trace mechanism

There are 3 methods to stop the trace recording mechanism:

- Set the trigger point (Trigger Mode) and Forward Rate as shown above
- Set breakpoints to stop the the emulation and the trace recording.
- Issue a Trace Stop command from the Debug menu (Fig 5-2) to stop the trace recording.

Fig 5-4 lists all the requirements to use the trace mechanism. This is the result of the Trace command from the Debug menu.

#### $\rightarrow$ To set the trace mode

- Choose the Trace command from the Debug Menu A Trace dialog box is displayed as in Fig 5-4.
- Choose a trace mode from the Trace Mode pull-down list box
- Press the OK button

TRACE		x
<u>T</u> race Mode:	Normal	OK
Trigger Mode:	Trigger at condition A	Cancel
l <u>o</u> op count:		Help
Forward Rate:	50% 🕂 📄 🕨 4096 frames	
C Condition <u>A</u>	+ {C,12,xxxxxxx,xxxx}	<u>S</u> et
C Condition <u>B</u>		
🖲 <u>Q</u> ualify	+ {C,12,xxxxxxx,xxxx}	
Q <u>u</u> alify List	+ {C,101b,xxxxxxxx,xxxx} + {C,12,xxxxxxxx,xxxx}	Add
		Delete
		Disable
		<u>C</u> lear All

Fig 5-4

## $\rightarrow$ To set the trigger mode

- Choose the Trace command from the Debug Menu A Trace dialog box is displayed as in Fig 5-4.
- Choose a trigger mode from the Trigger Mode pull-down list box
- press the OK button

## $\rightarrow$ To change the forward rate

- Choose the Trace command from the Debug Menu A Trace dialog box is displayed as in Fig 5-4
- Use the Forward Rate scroll bar to specify the desired rate
- Press the OK button

### $\rightarrow$ To setup the condition A/condition B

- Choose the Trace command of the Debug Menu A Trace dialog box is displayed as Fig 5-4
- Press Condition A/Condition B radio button
- Press the Set button

A Set dialog box is displayed as in Fig 5-5

- Enter the conditional information
- Press the OK button to close the Set Condition dialog box
- Press the OK button to close the Trace dialog box



Set Qualify		×
Space:	O Co <u>d</u> e O Data	ОК
L <u>o</u> cation:		Cancel
Co <u>n</u> tent:		Help
E <u>x</u> ternals	□read □write	

Fig 5-5

#### $\rightarrow$ To add a trace qualify condition

- Choose the Trace command from the Debug Menu A Trace dialog box is displayed as in Fig 5-4
- Press the Qualify radio button
- Press the Set button
  - A Set dialog box is displayed as in Fig 5-5
- Enter the qualifier information
- Press the OK button to close the Set Condition dialog box
- Press the Add button to add the qualifers into the Qualify list box below
- Press the OK button to close the Trace dialog box

### $\rightarrow$ To delete a trace qualify condition

- Choose the Trace command from the Debug Menu A Trace dialog box is displayed as in Fig 5-4
- Choose the qualify line to be deleted from the Qualify list box
- Press the Delete button
- Press the OK button to confirm

#### $\rightarrow$ To delete all qualify conditions

- Choose the Trace command from the Debug Menu A Trace dialog box is displayed as in Fig 5-4
- Press the Clear All button
- Press the OK button to confirm

**Note** If there is no qualifier, all instructions are qualified by default.

#### $\rightarrow$ To enable (disable) a trace qualify condition

- Choose the Trace command from the Debug Menu A Trace dialog box is displayed as in Fig 5-4
- Choose the disabled (enabled) qualifer line to be enabled (disabled) from the Qualify list box
- Press the Enable (Disable) button
- Press the OK button to confirm

**Note** At most, 6 trace qualifications can be enabled at the same time.

#### About the trace record format

Once the trace qualify and trigger conditions have been setup, those instructions which satisfy the qualify conditions will be recorded in the trace buffer. The Trace List command of the Window menu provides the functions to view and check the trace record information, used for debugging the program. The trace record fields may not all be displayed on the screen except for the sequence number. These fields are dependent upon the settings in the Debug sub-menu from the Options menu. The text enclosed by the parentheses are the headings shown in the Trace List command of the Window menu. Fig 5-6 and Fig 5-7 illustrate the contents of the trace list under the different debug options.

💽 TRACI	3				- 🗆 🗵
No.	PC	CODE	FILE-LINE	~~	
-00013:	00E2	28E1	DEMO.ASM(260)		
-00012:	00E1	17A4	DEMO.ASM(259)		<u> </u>
-00011:	00E2	28E1	DEMO.ASM(260)		
-00010:	00E1	17A4	DEMO.ASM(259)		
-00009:	00E2	28E1	DEMO.ASM(260)		
-00008:	00E1	17A4	DEMO.ASM(259)		
-00007:	00E2	28E1	DEMO.ASM(260)		
-00006:	00E1	17A4	DEMO.ASM(259)		
-00005:	00E2	28E1	DEMO.ASM(260)		
-00004:	00E1	17A4	DEMO.ASM(259)		
-00003:	00E2	28E1	DEMO.ASM(260)		
-00002:	00E1	17A4	DEMO.ASM(259)		
-00001:	00E2	28E1	DEMO.ASM(260)		-
			(		

Fig 5-6

• Sequence number (No)

For any of the trigger modes, the sequence number of a trigger point is +0. The trace records before and after the trigger point are numbered using negative and positive line numbers respectively. If all the fields of the Trace Record Fields (in the Debug Option of Option menu) are selected, the result is as shown in Fig 5-6. If No trigger mode is selected or the trigger point has not yet occurred, the sequence number starts from -00001 and decreases 1 sequentially for the trace records (Fig 5-7).

- Program count (PC)
- The program count of the instruction in this trace record.
- Machine code (CODE)

The machine code of this instruction.

• Disassembled instruction (INSTRUCTION)

The disassembled mnemonic instruction is disassembled using an HT-IDE2000 utility.

- Execution data (DAT) The data content to be executed (read/write).
- External signal status (3) The external signal 0~3 denotes the external signal ET0~ET3 respectively.
- Source file name with a line number (FILE-LINE)

The source file name and the line number of this instruction.

• Source file (SOURCE)

The source line statement (including symbols).

All the above fields are optional except the sequence number which is always displayed.

TRACI	3				_ <b>_ _</b> ×
No.	PC	code	INSTR	RUCTION	FILE-LINE
-00013:	00E2	28E1	JMP	OelH	DEMO.ASM(260) 🚽
-00012:	00E1	17A4	SDZ	[24H]	DEMO.ASM(259) 🕮
-00011:	00E2	28E1	JMP	0elH	DEMO.ASM(260)
-00010:	00E1	17A4	SDZ	[24H]	DEMO.ASM(259)
-00009:	00E2	28E1	JMP	OelH	DEMO.ASM(260)
-00008:	00E1	17A4	SDZ	[24H]	DEMO.ASM(259)
-00007:	00E2	28E1	JMP	OelH	DEMO.ASM(260)
-00006:	00E1	17A4	SDZ	[24H]	DEMO.ASM(259)
-00005:	00E2	28E1	JMP	OelH	DEMO.ASM(260)
-00004:	00E1	17A4	SDZ	[24H]	DEMO.ASM(259)
-00003:	00E2	28E1	JMP	OelH	DEMO.ASM(260)
-00002:	00E1	17A4	SDZ	[24H]	DEMO.ASM(259)
-00001:	00E2	28E1	JMP	0elH	DEMO.ASM(260) 🖵
				(	

Fig 5-7



**Note** To set the trace record fields use the Debug sub-menu of the Options menu. To view the trace record fields use Trace List command of the Window menu.

#### $\rightarrow$ Clear the trace buffer

The trace buffer can be cleared by issuing the Reset Trace command. Hereafter, the trace information will be saved from the beginning of the trace buffer. Note that both the Reset command and the Power-On Reset command also clear the trace buffer.





Chapter 6

# HT-IDE2000 Menu – Window

The HT-IDE2000 provides various kinds of window which assist the user to emulate or simulate application programs. These windows (as shown in Fig 6-1) include program data memory (RAM), program code memory (ROM), Trace List, Register, Watch , Stack, Program, Output, Sim. PAD and Sim. Result.

2000	sm - HT-IDE2 View Proj	000 - DAHI ect Debug	IDE200 Tools		Vdemo.PRJ Window Help							_ 6	5 X
Free Fort			*		<u>C</u> ascade Tile			\$1 <b>6</b>	2	6	? <b>\</b> ?		
∰Demo.a include				ADDR	- Arrange <u>I</u> cons		9		00: FF	FF 🔺	.countl	:[23H] = 00H	× H
data	.sect	ion		0020: 0	Cl <u>o</u> se All		00	00	01: FF 02: FF			:[24H] = 00H :[25H] = 00H	
temp 1sb	db db	? ?		0030: ( 0040: (	R <u>A</u> M ROM	Ctrl+Shift+A Ctrl+Shift+O			03: FF 04: FF	FF	.loop :[	[26H] = 00H [27H] = 10H	
msb countl	db db	? ?		0050: 2 0060: 0	Trace List	Ctrl+Shift+T Ctrl+Shift+T		00	04: FF 05: FF 06: FF	FF		28H] = 00H	
count2 count3	db db	? ?		0070: 0 0080: 0	Sum rap			01 0	07: FF				
loop loopl	යඩා යඩා	2 2		0090: 0	Sim. Result	Ctrl+Shift+R		40					▶
lamp code	db .sect		0	🤛 ROM	<ul> <li>✓ <u>R</u>egister</li> <li>✓ <u>W</u>atch</li> </ul>	Ctrl+Shit+₩					MPO =	: 14H	×
	jmp	00H start		ADDR	<ul> <li>✓ Stack</li> <li>✓ Program</li> </ul>	Ctrl+Shift+S Ctrl+Shift+P	5	6			MP1 =	00H 04H	
	jmp	04H int_sub 08H		0000: 2 0010: 0 0020: 2	✓ O <u>u</u> tput	Ctrl+Shift+U		000 008			PCL =	01H 10H	
	clr t	mrOc.4 timer O		0030: 2			DAG				TBLH =	7BH 07H	
		OCH	-	0040: 2	2 RAM ✓ 3 Demo.asm			072:		-	STATUS =		•
			• //			l		• //		▶		<u>)</u>	1
	ad D:\HID		WDIFL	lemo TSV	1002			× 0000	280F	JMP NOP	OfH		•
Loadin	ig debug i E2000∖SAM	nformatio	on					0002	0000	NOP NOP			
	error = 0							0004	289C	JMP NOP	9cH		U.
		(			[	D	É.	-1010			[	<u> </u>	Ľ
Open RAM	window						PC=000	1H			INS	NUM 00026	023

Fig 6-1



## Window Menu Commands

#### • RAM

The RAM window display the contents of the program data memory space as shown in Fig 6-2. The address spaces of the registers are not included in the RAM window because they are displayed in the register window. The contents of the RAM window can be modified directly for debugging purpose. The address displayed vertically is the base address while the horizontal single digit address is the offset. All the digit are displayed in hexadecimal format.

🥪 RAI	ví															. 🗆	×
ADDR	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	μŝ	A	в	С	D	E	F	
0020:	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	10-	00	00	00	00	00	00	40	00	H
0030:	08	80	00	00	00	00	81	00-0	00	00	00	00	00	80	02	00	4
0040:	00	40	04	40	00	20	00	00-3	80	04	00	00	00	02	80	20	
0050:	20	$^{04}$	00	10	00	00	00	00-0	00	03	00	00	00	00	51	$^{04}$	
0060:	01	00	00	00	10	00	01	00-0	04	00	00	10	00	08	40	00	
0070:	00	00	00	02	00	00	00	04-0	00	00	01	00	00	00	00	00	
0080:	00	00	00	40	00	01	00	00-0	00	08	00	00	00	00	00	01	
0090:	00	00	00	00	$^{04}$	00	00	01-0	01	00	40	08	00	00	00	02	-
													[				//

Fig 6-2

#### • ROM

The ROM window displays the contents of the program code memory space as shown in Fig 6-3. The ROM address range is from 0 to memory size 1 where the memory size is depends upon the uC selected in the project. The horizontal and vertical scrollbars can be used to view any address in the ROM window. The contents in ROM window are displayed in hexadecimal format and cannot be modified.

🤝 ROI	M										_ 🗆	×
ADDR	0	1	2	3	4	5 5	6	7	8	9	A	
0000:	280F	0000	0000	0000	289C	0000	0000	0000-	360E	28B7	0000	
0010:	008B	0F40	008E	OFFF	008D	OFFF	008C	320E-	0F40	0091	OFFF -	-
0020:	20DD	20DD	1F13	1F15	1F17	1F19	1F1B	1F1D-	1F1F	1F21	1F22	
0030:	1F1C	1F1E	20DD	20DD	0F01	00A6	1F92	20DD-	1F12	1F94	20DD	
0040:	20DD	1F18	1F9A	20DD	1F1A	1F98	20DD	1F18-	1F96	20DD	1F16	
0050:	1F92	20DD	0F01	00A6	0F01	00A8	0728	0092-	0094	0096	0098	
0060:	2856	1BA8	0728	0092	0094	0096	0098	009A-	20DD	340A	1BA8	
0070:	1F12	1F14	1F16	1F18	1F1A	OFOC	00A6	1F07-	1DA8	0728	0092	
0080:	1DA8	0728	0096	1487	1DA8	0728	0098	1487-	1DA8	0728	009A	-
				(				[				///

Fig 6-3

#### • Trace List

The Trace List window displays the trace record information as shown in Fig 6-4. The contents of the trace record can be defined in the Debug command in the Options menu. Double click the trace record in the Trace List window will activate the source file window and the cursor will stop at the corresponding line.

TRACE	3			•	
No.	PC	CODE	INSTRUCT	ION 101	FILE-LINE
-00011:	0013	OFFF	MOV	A,OffH	DEMO.ASM(34)
-00010:	0014	008D	MOV	[OdH],A	DEMO.ASM(35)
-00009:	0015	OFFF	MOV	A,OffH	DEMO.ASM(36)
-00008:	0016	008C	MOV	[OcH],A	DEMO.ASM(37)
-00007:	0017	320E	SET	[0eH].4	DEMO.ASM(38)
-00006:	0018	0F40	MOV	A,40H	DEMO.ASM(39)
-00005:	0019	0091	MOV	[11H],A	DEMO.ASM(40)
-00004:	001A	OFFF	MOV	A,OffH	DEMO.ASM(41)
-00003:	001B	0090	MOV	[10H],A	DEMO.ASM(42)
-00002:	001C	OFFF	MOV	A,OffH	DEMO.ASM(43)
-00001:	001D	008F	MOV	[0fH],A	DEMO.ASM(44)
			[		

Fig 6-4

• Register

The Register window displays all the registers defined in the uC selected in the project. Fig 6-5 shows an example of the Register window for the HT48C70. The contents of the Register window can be modified for debugging. Note that the Register window is dockable.

			×
<u>-</u> 4	14H		
=	00H		
=	FFH		
=	lFH		
=	05H		
=	00H		
=	07H		
=	00H		
=	0  FH	ETlI	
=	FFH		
=	FFH		
=	50H		
=	मन्त्र	Þ	-
		= 00H = FFH = 1FH = 05H = 00H = 07H = 07H = 0FH = FFH = FFH = 50H	<ul> <li>I I I I</li> <li>OOH</li> <li>FFH</li> <li>IFH</li> <li>OSH</li> <li>OOH</li> <li>O7H</li> <li>OOH</li> <li>OFH</li> <li>ETIII</li> <li>FFH</li> <li>FFH</li> <li>50H</li> </ul>

Fig 6-5



#### Watch

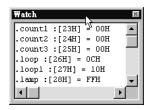
The Watch window displays the memory addresses and contents of the specified symbols defined in the data sections, i.e., in the RAM space. The format of the symbol is:

#### [source\_file\_name!].symbol\_name

The contents of the registers can also be displayed by first typing a period then typing the symbol name or register name and pressing the Enter key. The memory address and contents of the specified symbol or register will be displayed to the right of the symbol as shown in the following format:

#### :[address]=data contents

Note that both address and data are displayed in hexadecimal format as shown in Fig 6-6. The symbol and their corresponding data will be saved by the HT-IDE2000 and displayed the next time the Watch window is opened. The symbols can be deleted from Watch window by pressing the



delete key. Note that the Watch window is dockable.  $\mathbf{D}^{\mathsf{i}} = \mathbf{C} \cdot \mathbf{C}$ 

Fig 6-6

• Stack

The Stack window displays the contents of the stack buffer for the uC selected in the current project. The maximum stack level is dependent upon the uC selected. Fig 6-7 shows an example of the Stack window for the HT48C70 which has an 8 level stack. The growth of the stack is numbered from 0. The number is increased by 1 for a push operation (CALL instructions or interrupt) and decreased by 1 for a pop operation (RET or RETI instructions). The top stack line is highlighted. E.g. The 01: shown in Fig 6-7 is the top stack line. While executing a RET or RETI instruction, the program line number specified in the top stack line (134 in this example) will be used as the next instruction line to be executed. Also, the line above the top stack line (00: in this example) will be used as the new top stack line. If there is no stack line anymore, no line in the Stack window will be highlighted. The format of the stack line is:

Stack\_level: program\_counter source\_file\_name(line\_number)

where the stack\_level is the level number of the stack, program\_counter is the hex return address of the calling procedure or the program address of the interrupted instruction, source\_file\_name is the complete name of the source file containing the calling or interrupted instruction, and line\_number is the decimal line number of the instruction after the call instruction or interrupted instruction in the source file.

Stacl	k.	X
00:	000E	D:\TESTHIDE.32\TESTALL.ASM(65)
01:	004A	D:\TESTHIDE.32\TESTALL.ASM(134)
02:	FFFF	
03:	FFFF	
04:	FFFF	
05:	FFFF	
06:	FFFF	
07:	FFFF	<b>•</b>
┛		

Fig 6-7

• Program

The Program window displays the code memory or ROM in disassembly format. The address range is from 0 to memory size "1" where the memory size is depends upon the uC selected in the project.

• Sim. PAD

The Sim. PAD window is used as the interface to set the port inputs when the project is in simulation mode. After setting the port input, the result of an input instruction for this port will remain at the same value until the input level of this port is changed.

• Sim. Result

The Sim. Result window is used when the project is in simulation mode. This window displays the input/output levels of all ports for the current project.

• Output

The Output window shows the system messages from the HT-IDE2000 when the Build/Rebuild All commands are executing. By double clicking on the error message line, the window containing the source file will be displayed and the corresponding line containing the error highlighted.



Chapter 7

# Simulation

The HT-IDE2000 provides a simulation mechanism for debugging application programs. The HT-IDE2000 simulator provides the same functions as the HT-ICE, but does not require the actual presence of the HT-ICE to function. In the HT-IDE2000, all the debugging and window functions for the HT-ICE are valid for the simulator. In addition, the simulator provides an interface for the input and output ports. Although the simulator provides many functions, some hardware characteristics of the  $\mu$ C cannot be simulated. It is therefore recommended that emulation is carried out on the application program using the HT-ICE before manufacture of the masked IC.

# Start the Simulation

Upon entering the HT-IDE2000, two situations may occur. The first is when a project has already been opened, and the second is when no project has been opened. In the first case, the working mode of the HT-IDE2000 depends upon the working mode of this project. In the latter case, the working mode will be in simulation. Even if the working mode of a project is in emulation, it can be changed by the user to be in simulation. In addition, the working mode of the HT-IDE2000 will be in simulation when the following situations occur.

- No connection between the HT-ICE and the host machine or when the connection fails.
- The HT-ICE is powered off.

The Debug command in the Option menu provides the function to set the working mode of the HT-IDE2000. Fig 7-1 displays the contents of the Debug command.



Debug Option		×
Trace Record Fields          Image: program counter (PC)         Image: machine code (CODE)	Stepping Command — © Step I <u>n</u> to © Step O <u>v</u> er	OK Cancel
deassembled instruction (LNSTR)     execution data (DATA)     External signal status:     ETO  ET1  ET2  ET3	Connection Port © LPT1 © None © LPT2 © LPT3	Help
<pre>✓ file, line number (FILE-LINE)</pre> ☐ source line (SOURCE)	Mode © Simulation C Emulation	Sim. Option

Fig 7-1

In addition to  $\mu C$  simulator, Holtek provides a Virtual Peripheral Manager (VPM) which enable the user to directly drive and monitor the simulation of inputs and outputs on PC.

Reference chapter 15 for detail information of VPM.

# Chapter 8

# Using the OTP Programmer

# Introduction

The Holtek HandyWriter was specifically developed to program the range of Holtek OTP microcontroller devices allowing users to easily and efficiently burn their programming code into the OTP devices. The advantages of this writer include its small and easy to manage size, ease of installation and easy to use special features. The structure of the writer includes the following components and is shown in Fig 8-1 below:

- Single 40 pin DIP TEXTOOL
- Single 25 pin printer port D-type female connector
- Single 96 pin VME connector

To use the HandyWriter requires the following:

- 16V power adapter with minimum current rating of 500mA. For best purposes please use the adapter included with the HandyWriter carton.
- IBM386 compatible or higher spec. PC
- Win95/98/NT Windows operating system
- HT-IDE2000 microcontroller development system
- If the writer is directly connected to the PC, the HT-ICE is not required.



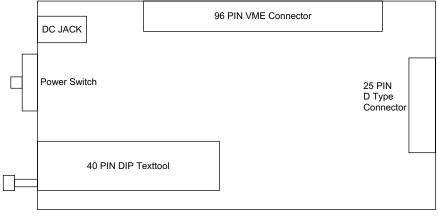


Fig 8-1

# Installation

- To directly connect to a PC, use the printer cable to connect from the HandyWriter's 25 pin D-type connector to the printer port of the PC as shown in Fig 8-2. To connect via the HT-ICE, first connect the HandyWriter to the VME 96 pin socket CN1 on the HT-ICE then connect the HT-ICE to the PC's printer port using the printer cable as shown in Fig 8-3.
- Install the HT-IDE2000 system software, to do so please consult the HT-IDE2000 User's Guide

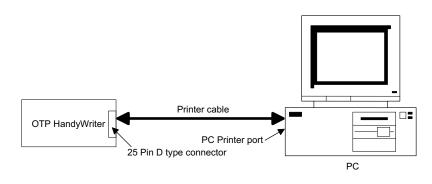
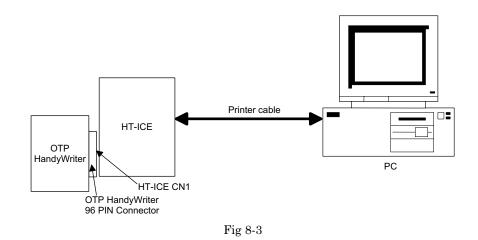


Fig 8-2





# Programming an OTP chip with the HandyWriter

#### $\rightarrow$ Run the HT-HandyWriter system software

Run the HT-HandyWriter system software under the HT-IDE2000 icon in the main Windows programs menu as shown in the Fig 8-4 below:

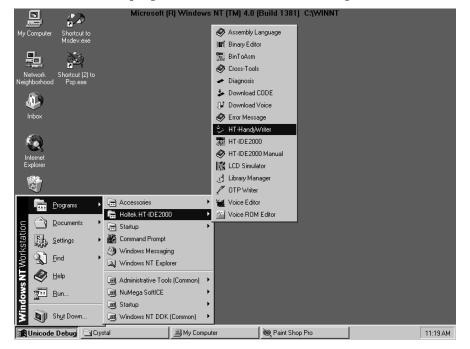


Fig 8-4



#### $\rightarrow$ LPT — Setup the Printer Port

After running the HandyWriter program, a window as shown in Fig 8-5 will be shown, however it is first necessary to setup the correct printer port. By selecting "LPT" command, a sub menu as shown in Fig 8-6 will be displayed. From here LPT1, LPT2 or LPT3 can be chosen. If the OTP HandyWriter is connected to the HT-ICE, then select the printer port to which the HT-ICE is connected. For example if the HT-ICE is connected to LPT1 then select LPT1 from Fig 8-6. If the OTP HandyWriter is directly connected to the PC printer port then choose the relevant printer port in the same way.

E:\PA	ITERN	NOTP\	SRY_	12_NF	N.OT	P			en	<u>P</u> rogram
File	PID :	DAb.	OTD :	85h						⊻erify
0000:	1F36				3412	1F94	3414	3416		
0008:	OFFE	0092	0712	0D01	00B0	1F12	OFOO	0092		Bla <u>n</u> k Chec
0010:	OFFF	0094	34B6	0002	OFFE	0094	1F2B	1F2C		
0018:	1F2A	2032	3C36	2810	072B	OOAC	23F6	2032		Loc <u>k</u>
0020:	3C36	2810	0720	042B	390A	2810	206A	1088		
0028:	2810	38B6	01BA	30B6	218F	21D4	23ED	072B		
0030:	OOAC	281F	3436	1F28	1F29	OFOO	0092	OFFC		A <u>u</u> to
0038:	00B1	0731	0414	3D0A	2847	14A8	300A	3031		=
0040:	1AB1	3431	OFFE	0431	390A	2839	2860	OFFE		🗖 Lo <u>c</u> k
	0094	OFFF		1FB2	OFFE	0414	390A	2862		
0050:	14A9	34B2	0732	0092	OFFE	0414	390A	2862		Read
0058:	14A9	300A	1AB2	OFFF	0432	390A		2860		
0060:	3036	2865	1128	0529	OOAB	OFFE	0094			CS:1F9Eh
0068:	0092	0003	1F07	14A8	286F	0F08	0387	17A8		
0070:	286D	14A9	2874	1487	17A9	2873	0130	OE3C		Chip <u>I</u> nfo
									_	E <u>x</u> it

Fig 8-5



ody <u>L</u>	PT ! <u>O</u> LPT <u>1</u>	ption 	<u>D</u> upli	cate <u>S</u>	/N					
E:\F V	· LPT <u>1</u>		SRY_	10 ME		D		- 10	<u>e</u> n	<u>P</u> rogram
	LPT3		<u>- '</u> אנ	12_NF	N.OH					
File	_		OID :	85h						⊻erify
0000:	1F36	1F39	1F3A	1F92	3412	1F94	3414	3416		
0008:	OFFE	0092	0712	OD01	00B0	1F12	OFOO	0092		Bla <u>n</u> k Check
0010:	OFFF	0094	34B6	0002	OFFE	0094	1F2B	1F2C		
0018:	1F2A	2032	3C36	2810	072B	OOAC	23 <b>F</b> 6	2032		Loc <u>k</u>
0020:	3C36	2810		042B	390A			1088		
0028:	2810	38B6	O1BA		218F	21D4		072B		
0030:	OOAC			1F28	1F29	OFOO	0092	OFFC		A <u>u</u> to
0038:	00B1			3D0A		14A8	300A			
0040:	1AB1	3431		0431	390A		2860	OFFE		🗖 Lo <u>c</u> k
0048:	0094		0092	1FB2	OFFE		390A			
0050:	14A9	34B2	0732	0092	OFFE		390A			<u>R</u> ead
0058:	14A9		1AB2	OFFF	0432			2860		
0060:	3036	2865	1128	0529	OOAB	OFFE	0094			CS:1F9Eh
0068:	0092	0003	1F07	14A8	286F	0F08	0387	1748		
0070:	286D	14A9	2874	1487	17A9	2873	0130	OE3C		Chip <u>I</u> nfo
										E <u>x</u> it
										<u> </u>
Selected	Body	: HT48	3RA0							Connect : LPT2
-T-Handγ	AVrito	r Vor 7	00							

Fig 8-6

#### $\rightarrow$ **!Body** — Select the OTP Body Type

By clicking on "!Body", [Set Body] dialog will be shown as Fig 8-7. If there is no IC type identifier stored in the OTP chip, all the read/write operations will be completed according to the chip type that selected by users.

Set Body		×
lf system cannot following body:	ہم recognize the chip t	type, set as the
Body:	HT48RA0A	•
	OK	Cancel

Fig 8-7

#### $\rightarrow$ !Option — Check the IC Option

By clicking on "!Option", a pop-up dialog, as shown in Fig 8-8, will be displayed. It will illustrate the option that comes from opened file or OTP chip content.

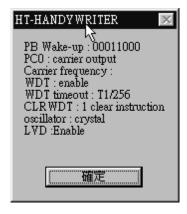


Fig 8-8

#### → HT-HandyWriter Programming Functions

Fig 8-5 shows the internal functions of the HandyWriter. The 8 buttons shown at the right hand side of this window each represent an instruction, the function of which is explained below:

• Open

This opens a file with the .OTP suffix, which will load the program contents into the PC ram memory. This data will be accessed when programming the relevant OTP device. After selecting "Open", the file dialogue box will be displayed from which the correct folder and file name can be chosen. The file content will be displayed in the message window after being opened, and the checksum of the opened file will be shown underneath the "Read" button.

• Program

This instruction encompasses two functions. The first is to place the program data in the PC ram memory into the OTP device, the second is a verification check to verify that the actual data burned into the OTP device is the same as that in the PC ram memory data. After verification the result of this process will be shown on the HandyWriter display.

• Verify

The contents of the presently loaded OTP device will be read and checked that it is the same as the data loaded into the PC ram memory, the results of which will be displayed on the HandyWriter display.



- - Blank Check

Check that the presently loaded OTP device has not previously been written to. The results of this check will be displayed on the HandyWriter display. If the device is not empty, the memory area that has been written to will also be shown on the display.

• Lock

This instruction will implement the protect function in the OTP device preventing the contents of this IC from being read. After programming an OTP device, this instruction can then be used to protect the contents.

• Auto

This instruction will execute in order the three instructions Blank Check, Program and Verify. If any of the instructions do not execute correctly, the process will be halted and the following instruction not executed. There is also a lock function, which can be selected to prevent the data from being read out after programming. This lock function should first be selected before the Auto button pressed.

• Read

This instruction will read out the contents of the OTP device presently loaded into the HandyWriter and store them in the PC ram memory. This instruction will also cause the file checksum to be displayed underneath the "Read" button. If required, this data can also be stored in a file with the .OTP file suffix.

• Chip Info

This instruction will read power-on ID, software ID, ROM size, option size from IC and display "Get info from chip" message to inform users the listed information comes from IC interior. If there is no such information inside IC, the specification defined by "!Body" command will be shown. It will display "Get info from ini" to inform users that above information comes from system setting.

#### → HT-HandyWriter Additional Functions

• Duplicate - automatic OTP detection and duplication

This function enables multi-OTPs of the same type to be continuously programmed. After opening the file using the Open instruction and inserting the OTP into the TEXTOOL socket, the HandyWriter will automatically detect the device and then proceed to implement the functions that have been setup. In this way, after the desired .OTP file has been opened, it is only necessary to place the correct device in the socket to program a large number of devices.

Before using this function, it is first necessary to setup the Auto-Program functions that are required. To setup these functions, select the [duplicate]/Setup instruction as shown in Fig 8-9. The Auto-Program window as shown in Fig 8-10 will then be displayed from which the user can select the required functions from the Blank Check, Program, Verify and Lock list.

When the [Duplicate]/Enable instruction is selected as shown in Fig 8-11, the Auto-Program function will be activated. After this instruction has been activated, it is now possible to proceed with multi-chip programming. After the chips have all been programmed, the Auto-Program function can be switched off, by again selecting the toggle action [Duplicate]/Enable instruction as shown in Fig 8-11.

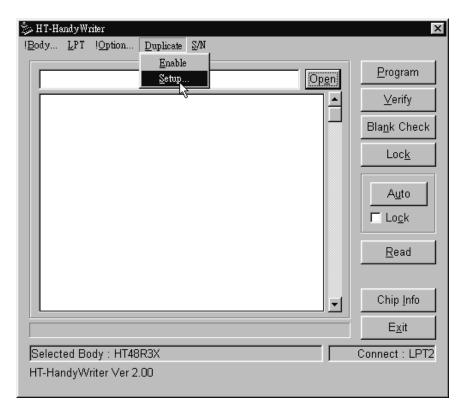


Fig 8-9





Fig 8-10

HT-Hənd y Writer حَرَّ	×
!Body LPT !Option Duplicate S/N	
<u>Enable</u> SetupN	<u>P</u> rogram
	⊻erify
	Bla <u>n</u> k Check
	Loc <u>k</u>
	A <u>u</u> to
	🗖 Lo <u>c</u> k
	Read
	Chip Info
	E <u>x</u> it
Selected Body : HT48R3X	Connect : LPT2
HT-HandyWriter Ver 2.00	

Fig 8-11

• S/N Serial Number Writing

The Serial Number menu enables an 8-digit hexadecimal serial number to be written into a specially allocated position within the Program ROM. The Serial Number is written into the Lower byte locations of Program ROM addresses 1,2,3 and 7. Location 7 will contain the MSB of the Serial Number while locations 3 and 2 will contain the subsequent locations with location 1 containing the LSB. Note that the Serial Number will be automatically incremented by one after each device has been programmed. If this function is to be used, then the application program must not use these 4 words for other purposes, otherwise the application code will be overwritten during programming.

First, it is necessary to setup the initial value of the serial number. To do this select the [S/N]/Setup instruction, after which a window, as shown in Fig 8-12 will be displayed where up to 8 hexadecimal digits can be written. The [S/N]/Enable function, as shown in Fig 8-13, should then be chosen to activate this function. The Serial Number will now be displayed on the lower right corner of the main menu. Now, whenever the Program function is activated, the Serial Number will be written into the Program ROM, the value of which will be incremented by one for each subsequently programmed device.

To de-activate the write Serial Number function, the toggle action [S/N]/Enable function, as shown in Fig 8-13, should once again be selected.

Serial Number		×
Serial Number:	1234567b	Hex
	OK	Cancel

Fig 8-12

🏂 HT-Hə	ndyWı	iter					×
! <u>B</u> ody	<u>L</u> PT	! <u>O</u> ption	Duplicate	<u>s</u> /N	-1		
				<u>E</u> nable <u>S</u> etupN		<u>Open</u>	<u>P</u> rogram
lin				·			⊻erify
							Bla <u>n</u> k Check
							Loc <u>k</u>
							Auto
							<u>R</u> ead
							Chip Info
							E <u>x</u> it
Select	ed Bo	dy : HT48	R3X				Connect : LPT2
HT-Har	ndyWi	riter Ver 2.	.00				

Fig 8-13

# **System Messages**

- → HandyWriter Connect to LPT1. OTP HandyWriter already connected to LPT1.
- $\rightarrow$  Cannot connect to ICE

Connection problems between the HandyWriter, the HT-ICE and the printer port.

 $\rightarrow \quad \text{Invalid EV Chip!}$ 

The HandyWriter is unable to support the EV chip in the HT-ICE. The HT-ICE must be changed for correct operation to take place.

#### $\rightarrow$ Connect to HandyWriter through ICE

The HandyWriter is successfully connected via the HT-ICE.





#### → Cannot find HandyWriter, please connect it to ICE Or this HandyWriter is an old version

The HT-ICE is already connected to the printer port, but the HandyWriter is not connected to the HT-ICE. It may also be that an old version of the HandyWriter is being used (THANDYOTP-A) so the system is unable to detect a good connection. If the former case, please connect the HandyWriter directly to the ICE.

#### $\rightarrow$ File PID: ADh, OID: 50h

The opened files recorded power-on ID is ADh, the software ID is 50h.

#### $\rightarrow$ Invalid OTP file format

The opened file format is incorrect.

 $\rightarrow\,$  The chip PID: ADh, OID: 50h doesn't match with the file PID: ADh, OID: 51h

#### Are you sure to continue?

The type of OTP chip and the chip supported by the opened file does not match.

 $\rightarrow$  Chip ROM size: 0400h, File ROM size: 0800h. System will set ROM size as 0400h.

#### Are you sure to continue?

The OTP chip has 400h of writable space, the file content is 800h, so the HandyWriter can only write 400h of data into the contents of the OTP chip.

#### → Addr: xxxxh, Data: yyyyh, Rdata: zzzzh Program/Option Verify Failed!

Errors exist in either the program or option verification information. The reason is because the data at the address xxxxh in the OTP chip is not the same as the data yyyyh in the PC ram memory.

#### → Addr: xxxxh, Data: zzzzh Not Blank!

The OTP chip is not blank as the address xxxh contains the data zzzzh, inhibiting the implementation of further instructions.

#### → Chip mismatched!

The OTP chip presently in the HandyWriter and the OTP chip mentioned in the .OTP file do not match, inhibiting the implementation of further instructions.



#### $\rightarrow$ Chip is locked!

The OTP chip presently in the HandyWriter is locked, inhibiting the implementation of further instructions.

#### $\rightarrow$ No data to verify/program!

Before executing the Verify or Program instruction, the .OTP file must be loaded using the "Open" function in the HandyWriter system software.



Part II Development Language and Tools

Part II

# Development Language and Tools



Chapter 9

# Holtek C Language

# 9

# Introduction

The Holtek C compiler is based on ANSI C. Due to the architecture of the Holtek microcomputer, only a subset of ANSI C is supported. This chapter describes the C programming language supported by the Holtek C compiler.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- C program structure
- Variables
- Constants
- Operators
- Program control flow
- Functions
- Pointers and arrays
- Structures and unions
- Preprocessor directives
- Holtek-C specifics





### **C Program Structure**

A C program is a collection of statements, comments, and preprocessor directives.

#### Statements

Statements, which may consist of variables, constants, operators and functions, are terminated with a semicolon and perform the following operations:

- Declare data variables and data structures
- Define data space
- Perform arithmetic and logical operations
- Perform program control operations

One line can contain more than one statement. Compound statements are one or more statements contained within a pair of braces and can be used as a single statement. Some statements and preprocessor directives are required in the Holtek C source files. The following is a shell:

```
void main()
{
/* user application source code */
}
```

The main function is defined within the user application source code. There may be more than one source file for an application, but only one source file can contain the main function.

#### Comments

Comments are used to document the meaning and operation of the source statements and can be placed anywhere in a program except for the middle of a C keyword, function name or variable name. The C compiler ignores all comments. Comments cannot be nested. The Holtek C compiler supports two kinds of comments, block comment and line comment.

#### → Block comment

The block comment begins with /\* and ends with \*/, for example:

```
/* this is a block comment */
```

A block comment s end character \*/ may be placed in a different line from the beginning block comment characters. In this case all the characters between the starting comment characters and end comment characters, are treated as comments and ignored by the C compiler.



#### → Line comment

A line comment begins with  ${\it I\!I}$  and comments out all characters to the end of the line, for example

// this is a line comment

# Identifiers

The name of an identifier contains a sequence of letters, digits, and under scores with the following rules:

The first character must not be a digit

- Only the first 31 characters are significant
- Upper case and lower case letters are different
- Reserved words cannot be used

#### **Reserved words**

The following are the reserved words supported by the Holtek C complier. They must be in lower case.

auto	bits	break	case	char
const	continue	default	do	else
enum	extern	for	goto	if
$\operatorname{int}$	long	return	$\operatorname{short}$	signed
static	struct	$\operatorname{switch}$	typedef	union
unsigned	void	volatile	while	

The reserved words **double**, **float**, **register** and **static** are not supported by the Holtek C compiler.

#### Data types and sizes

Only three basic data types are supported by the Holtek C compiler,

- char a single byte holding one character
- int an integer occupying one byte
- void an empty set of values, used as the type returned by functions that generate no value

The following qualifiers are allowed

Qualifier	Applicable Data Type	Use
const	any	place the data in a ROM space
long	int	create a 16-bit integer
short	int	create an 8-bit integer
signed	char, int	create a signed variable
unsigned	char, int	create an unsigned variable

Data Type	Size (bits)	Range
char	8	$-128 \sim 127$
unsigned char	8	$0 \sim 255$
int	8	$-128 \sim 127$
unsigned	8	$0 \sim 255$
short int	8	$-128 \sim 127$
unsigned short int	8	$0 \sim 255$
long	16	$-32768 \sim 32767$
unsigned long	16	$0 \sim 65535$

The following are the data types, sizes and range

#### Declaration

Variables must be declared before being used as this defines the data type and the size of the variable. The syntax of variable declaration is:

data\_type variable\_name [,variable\_name...];

where **data\_type** is a valid data type and **variable\_name** is the name of the variable. The variables declared in a function are private (or local) to that function and other functions cannot access these variables directly. The local variables in a function exist and are valid only when this function is called, and are non-valid when exiting from the function. If the variable is declared outside of all functions, then it is global to all functions.

The qualifier **const** can be applied to a declaration of any variable, to specify that the value of the variable will not be changed. The variables declared with **const** are placed within the ROM space. The **const** qualifier can be used in array variables. A **const** variable must be initialized upon declaration, followed by an equal sign and an expression. Other variables cannot be initialized when declared.

A variable can be declared in a specified RAM address by using the @ character; the syntax is:

#### data\_type variable\_name @ memory\_location;

For example:

```
int lcd @ 0×20; /* declare the variable lcd in the offset 0×20 of RAM */
```

Also, an array can be declared in a specified location:

int port[8] @ 0×20; /\* array port takes memory location 0×20 through 0×27 \*/

All variables implemented by the Holtek C compiler are static unless they are declared as external variables. Note that both static and external variables will not be initialized to zero by default.

## Constants

A constant is any literal number, single character or character string.

#### Integer constants

An integer constant is evaluated as int type, a long constant is terminated with l or L. Unsigned constants are terminated with a u or U, the suffix ul or UL indicates unsigned long. The value of an integer constant can be specified with the following forms:

Binary constant: preceding the number by 0b or 0B Octal constant: preceding the number by 0 (zero) Hexadecimal constant: preceding the number by 0x or 0X Others not included above are decimal

#### **Character constants**

A character constant is an integer, which is denoted by a single character enclosed by single quotes. The value of a character constant is the numeric value of the character in the machine s character set. ANSI C escape sequences are treated as a single character constant.

#### String constants

String constants are represented by zero or more characters (including the ANSI C escape sequences) enclosed in double quotes. A string constant is an array of characters and has an implied null (zero) value after the last character. Hence, the total required storage is one more than the number of the characters within the double quotes.

#### **Enumeration constants**

Another method for naming integer constants is called enumeration. For example:

```
enum {PORTA, PORTB, PORTC} ;
```

defines three integer constants called enumerators and assigns values to them. Since enumerator values are by default assigned increasing from 0, this is equivalent to writing

const PORTA=0 ; const PORTB=1 ; const PORTC=2 ;

An enumeration can be named. For example:

enum boolean {NO, YES};

The first name (NO) in an **enum** statement has the value 0, the next has the value 1. The entries in the enumeration list are assigned constant integer values. These values are limited within the range 0 to 255. Although variables of the enum type may be declared, the Holtek C compiler will not check whether what was stored in such a variable is a valid value for the enumeration. Nevertheless, the enumeration variables offer the chance of checking and as a result is a better method than **#define**.

Escape Character	Description	Hex Value
∖a	alert (bell) character	07
$\searrow b$	backspace sharacter	08
h	form feed character	0C
n	new line character	0A
$\mathbf{r}$	carriage return character	$0\mathrm{D}$
$\mathbf{r}$	horizontal tab character	09
$\setminus v$	vertical tab character	$0\mathrm{B}$
$\setminus \setminus$	backslash	$5\mathrm{C}$
$\setminus$ ?	question mark character	3F
$\backslash$	single quote (apostrophe)	27
$\mathbf{n}$	double quote character	22

## **Operators**

An expression is a sequence of operators and operands that specifies a computation. An expression follows the rules of algebra, may result in a value and may cause side effects. The order of evaluation of subexpressions is determined by the precedence and grouping of the operators. The usual mathematical rules for associativity and commutativity of operators may be applied only where the operators are really associative and commutative. The different types of operators are discussed in the following.

#### **Arithmetic operators**

There are five arithmetic operators,

- + addition
- subtraction
- \* multiplication
- / division
- % modulus (the remainder of division, always positive or zero)

The modulus operator %, can only be used with integral data types.

#### **Relational operators**

The relational operators compare two values and return either a TRUE or FALSE result based on the comparison.

- > greater than
- >= greater than or equal to
- < less than
- <= less than or equal to

#### **Equality operators**

The equality operators are exactly analogous to the relational operators

- == equal to
- != not equal to

#### Logical operators

The logical operators support the logical operations AND, OR and NOT. They create a TRUE or FALSE value. Expressions connected by && and || are evaluated from left to right. The evaluation stops as soon as the result is known. The numeric value of a relational or logical expression is 1 if the relation is true, and 0 otherwise. The unary negation operator ! converts a non-zero operand into 0 and a zero operand into 1.

&&	logical AND
	logical OR
!	logical NOT



#### **Bitwise operators**

There are six operators for manipulating bit-by-bit operations. The shift operators >> and << perform the right and left shifts of the left operand by the number of bit positions given by the right operand, which must be positive. The unary ~ yields the one's complement of an integer, converts every 1-bit to a 0-bit and vice versa.

- & bitwise AND
- | bitwise OR
- ^ bitwise XOR
- ~ one s complement
- >> right shift
- << left shift

#### Assignment operators

There are a total of 10 assignment operators for expression statements. For simple assignment, the equal sign is used with the value of the expression replacing the variable, in the left operand. This also provides a shortcut for modifying a variable by performing an operation on itself.

<var> + = <expr> add the value of <expr> to <var> <var> - = < expr> subtract the value of <expr> from <var> <var> \* = <expr> multiply <var> by the value of <expr> <var> / = <expr> divide <var> by the value of <expr> <var> % = <expr> modulus, remainder when<var> is divided by <expr> <var> & = <expr> bitwise AND <var> with the value of <expr> <var> | = <expr> bitwise OR <var> with the value of <expr> <var> ^ = <expr> bitwise XOR <var> with the value of <expr> <var> > = <expr> right shift <var> by <expr> positions <var> << = <expr> left shift <var> by <expr> positions

#### Increment and decrement operators

The increment and decrement operators can be used in a statement by themselves, or can be embedded within a statement with other operators. The position of the operator indicates whether the increment or decrement is to be performed before (prefix operators) or after (postfix operators) the evaluation of the statement it is embedded within.

++ <var></var>	pre-increment
<var> ++</var>	post-increment
<var></var>	pre-decrement
<var></var>	post-decrement

#### **Conditional operators**

The conditional operator **?:** is a shortcut for executing a statement between two selectable statements according to the result of the expression.

<expr> ? <statement1> : <statement2>

If *<expr>* evaluates to a nonzero value, *<statement1>* is executed. Otherwise, *<satement2>* is executed.

#### **Comma operator**

A pair of expressions separated by a comma is evaluated from left-to-right and the value of the left expression is discarded. All side effects of the left expression are performed before the evaluation of the right expression. The type and value of the result are the type and value of the right operand. For example,

f(a, (t=3, t+2), c);

has three arguments, the second of which has the value 5.

#### Precedence and associativity of operators

The following table lists the precedence and associativity of operators. The precedence is from the highest to the lowest. Each box holds operators with the same precedence. Unary and assignment operators are right associative, all others are left associative.

Operators	Description	Associativity
[]	subscription	left to right
()	parenthesis	
_>	structure pointer	
	structure member	
sizeof	size of type increment	
++	increment	right to left
	dcrement	
~	complement	
!	not	
_	unary minus	
+	unary plus	
&	address of	
*	dereference	
*	multiply	left to right
/	divide	Ũ
%	modulus (remainder)	

Operators	Description	Associativity
+ -	add (binary) subtract (binary)	left to right
<< >>	shift left shift right	left to right
< <= > >=	less than less than or equal to greater than greater than or equal to	left to right
== != &   &&     ?:	equal not equal bitwise AND bitwise XOR (exclusive OR) bitwise OR logical AND logical OR conditional expression	left to right
= *= /= %= += = <<= >>= &=  = ^=	simple assignment multiply and assign divide and assign modulus and assign add and assign subtract and assign left shift and assign right shift and assign bitwise AND and assign bitwise OR and assign bitwise XOR and assign	right to left
,	comma	left to right

#### Type conversions

The general rule for type conversion is to convert a "narrower" operand into a "wider" one without losing information, such as converting an integer into a long integer. The conversion from **char** to **long** is sign extension. Explicit type conversion can be forced in any expression, with a unary operator called a cast. In the example:

(type-name) expression

the **expression** is converted to the named type



# **Program Control Flow**

The statements in this section are used to control the flow of execution in a program. The use of relational and logical operators with these control statements and how to execute loops are also described.

- $\rightarrow$  if-else statement
  - Syntax

```
if (expression)
statement1;
[else
statement2;
]
```

• Description

The **if-else** statement is a conditional statement. The block of statements executed depends on the result of the condition. If the result of the condition is nonzero, the block of its associated statements is executed. Otherwise, the block of statements associated with the **else** statement is executed if the **else** block exists. Note that the **else** statement and its block of statements may not exist as it is optional.

• Example

```
if (word_count > 128)
{
    word_count=1
    line++;
}
else
    word_count++;
```

#### $\rightarrow$ for statement

#### • Syntax

for (initial-expression; condition-expression; update-expression) statement;

The *initial-expression* is executed first and only once. It is used to assign an initial value to a loop counter variable. This loop counter variable must be declared before the **for** loop.

The **condition-expression** is evaluated prior to each execution of the loop. If the **condition-expression** is evaluated to be nonzero, the statement in the loop is executed. Otherwise, the loop exits and the first statement encountered after the loop is executed next. The **update-expression** executes after the statement of the loop.

• Description

The **for** statement is used to execute a statement or block of statements repeatedly.



```
• Example
```

- $\rightarrow$  while statement
  - Syntax

while (condition-expression)
 statement;

• Description

The **while** statement is another kind of loop. When the **condition-expression** is nonzero, the while loop executes a statement or block of statements. The **condition-expression** is checked prior to each execution of the statement.

```
• Example
i=0;
while (b[i] !=0)
```

```
{
    a[i]=b[i];
    i++;
}
```

#### $\rightarrow$ do-while statement

 $\bullet$  Syntax

do

statement;

while (condition-expression);

• Description

The **do-while** statement is another kind of while loop. The statement is always executed before the **condition-expression** is evaluated. Hence, the statement executes at least once, then checks the condition-expression.

• Example

 $\rightarrow$  break and continue statement

```
• Syntax
```

```
break;
continue;
```

• Description

The **break** statement is used to force an immediate exit from **while**, **for**, **do-while** loops and **switch**. The **break** statement bypasses normal termination and returns control to the previous nesting level if a **break** occurs within a nested loop.

The **continue** statement orders the program to skip to the end of the loop and begins the next iteration of the loop. In the **while** and **do-while** loops, the continue statement forces the condition-expression to be executed immediately. In the **for** loop, control passes to the update-expression.

• Example

```
char a[10],b[10],i,j;
for (i=j=0;i<10;i++)// copy data from b[] to a[],skip blanks
{
    if (b[i]==0) break;
    if (b[i]==0x20) continue;
    a[j++]=b[i];
}
```

- $\rightarrow$  goto statement and label
  - Syntax

See the Syntax for **switch** statement

• Description

A label has the same form as a variable name, but followed by a colon. It can be attached to any statement in the same function as the **goto** statement. The scope of a label is the entire function.

• Example

See the  $\mathbf{switch}$  statement example

 $\rightarrow$  switch statement

```
• Syntax
   switch (variable)
   {
       case constant1:
          statement1;
          break;
       case constant2:
          statement2;
          goto Label1;
       case constant3:
          statement3;
          break;
       default:
          statement;
   Labell: statement4;
          break;
   }
```

The **switch** variable is tested against a list of constants. When a match is found, the statements with that constant are executed until a **break** statement is encountered. If no **break** statement exists, execution flows through the rest of the statements until the end of the **switch** routine. If no match is found, the statements associated with the **default** case are executed. The **default** case is optional.

Description

The **if-else** statement can be used to select between a pair of alternatives, but becomes cumbersome when many alternatives exist. The **switch** statement is an alternative multi-way decision method that evaluates if an expression matches one of many alternatives, and branches accordingly. It is equivalent to multiple if-else statements.

The **switch** statement's limitation is that the **switch** variable must be an integral data type, and can only be compared against constant values.

• Example

## **Functions**

In the C language, all executable statements must reside within a function. Before a function is used or called, it must be either defined or declared, otherwise a warning message will be issued by the C compiler. Two syntax forms, namely classic and modern, are supported for function declaration and definition.

#### **Classic form**

return-type function-name (arg1, arg2,...) var-type arg1; var-type arg2;



#### Modern form

return-type function-name (var-type arg1, var-type arg2, ...)

In both forms, the *return-type* is the data type of the function returned value. If functions do not return values, then *return-type* must be declared as *void*. The *function-name* is the name of this function and is equalent to a global variable of all other functions. The arguments, arg1, arg2 etc, are the variables to be used in this function. Their data type must be specified. These variables are defined as formal parameters to receive values when the function is called.

#### → Function declaration

```
// classic form
  return-type function-name (arg1, arg2, ...);
// modern form
  return-type function-name (var-type arg1, var-type arg2,...);
```

#### → Function definition

```
// classic form
return-type function-name (arg1, arg2, ...)
var-type arg1;
var-type arg2;
{
    statements;
}
// modern form
return-type function-name (var-type arg1, var-type arg2, ...)
{
    statements;
}
```

#### → Passing arguments to functions

There are two methods for passing arguments to functions.

- Pass by value. This method copies the argument values to the corresponding formal parameters of the function. Any changes to the formal parameters will not affect the original values of the corresponding variables in the calling routine.
- Pass by reference. In this method, the address of the argument is copied to the formal parameters of the function. Within the function, the formal parameters can access the actual variables within the calling routine. Hence, changes to the formal parameters can be made to the variables.

#### $\rightarrow$ Returning values from functions

By using the **return** statement, a function can return a value to the calling routine. The returned value must be of a data type specified within the

function definition. If **return-type** is **void**, it means no return value, therefore no value should be in the **return** statement. When a **return** statement is encountered, the function returns immediately to the calling routine. Any statements after the **return** statement are not executed.

# **Pointers and Arrays**

#### Pointers

A pointer is a variable that contains the address of another variable. For example, if a pointer variable, namely varpoint, contains the address of a variable var, then varpoint points to var. The syntax to declare a pointer variable is

data-type \*var\_name;

The **data-type** of a pointer is a valid C data type. It specifies the type of variable that **var\_name** points to. The asterisk (\*) prior to **var\_name** tells the C compiler that **var\_name** is a pointer variable.

Two special operators, the asterisk (\*) and ampersand (&), are associated with pointers. The address of a variable can be accessed by preceding this variable with the & operator. The \* operator returns the value stored at the address pointed to by the variable.

In addition to \* and &, there are four operators that can be applied to the pointer variables: +, ++, -, --. Only integer quantities may be added or subtracted from pointer variables. An important point to remember when performing pointer arithmetic is that the value of the pointer is adjusted according to the size of the data type it is pointing to.

#### Arrays

An array is a list of variables that are of the same type and which can be referenced by the same name. An individual variable in the array is called an array element. The first element of an array is defined to be at an index of 0 and the last element is defined to be at an index of the total elements minus one. C stores one-dimensional arrays in contiguous memory locations. The first element is at the lowest address. C does not perform boundary checking for arrays.

Assignment from an entire array to another array is not allowed. To copy, each individual element must be copied one by one from the first array into the second array. Any array element can be used anywhere a variable or a constant can be used.



# **Structures and Unions**

→ Structures

```
• Syntax
```

```
struct struct-name
{
```

```
data-type member1;
data-type member2;
...
data-type membern;
} [variable-list];
```

#### • Description

A **structure** is a collection of one or more variables, possibly of different types, grouped together under a single name for convenient handling. Structures may be copied and assigned to, passed to functions and returned by functions. C allows bit fields. Nested structures are also allowed.

The reserved word **struct** indicates a structure is to be defined while **struct-name** is the name of the structure. Within the structure, **data-type** is one of the valid data types. Members within the structure may have different data types. The **variable-list** declares variables of the type struct-name. Each item in the structure is referred to as a member.

After defining a structure, other variables of the same type are declared with the following syntax:

struct struct-name variable-list;

To access a member of a structure, specify the name of the variable and the name of member separated by a period. The syntax is

svariable.member1

where *svariable* is the variable of structure type and *member1* is a member of the structure. A structure member can have a data type with a previously defined structure. This is referred to as a nested structure.

• Example

```
struct person_id
{
    char id_num[6];
    char name[3];
    unsigned long birth_date;
} mark;
```



#### > Unions

```
union union-name
{
    data-type member1;
    data-type member2;
    ...
    data-type memberm;
} [variable-list];
```

• Description

**Unions** are a group of variables of differing types that share the same memory space. A union is similar to a structure, but its memory usage is very different. In a structure, all the members are arranged sequentially. In a union, all members begin at the same address, making the size of the **union** equal to the size of the largest member. Accessing the members of a union is the same as accessing the members of a structure.

**Union** is a reserved word and *union-name* is the name of the union. The *variable-list*, which is optional, contains the variables that have the same data type as union-name.

#### • Example

```
union common_area
{
    char name[3];
    int id;
    long date;
} cdata;
```

# **Preprocessor Directives**

The preprocessor directives give general instructions on how to compile the source code. It is a simple macro processor that conceptually processes the source codes of a C program before the compiler properly parses the source program. In general, the Preprocessor directives do not translate directly into executable code. It removes preprocessor command lines from the source file and expands macro calls that occur within the source text and adds additional information, such as the **#line** command, on the source file.

The Preprocessor directives begin with the **#** symbol. A line that begins with a **#** is treated as a preprocessor command, and is followed by the name of a command. The following are the preprocessor directives:

#### → Macro substitution: #define

```
• Syntax
```

```
#define name replaced-text
#define name [(parameter-list)] replaced-text
```

• Description

The **#define** directive defines string constants that are substituted into a source line before the source line is evaluated. The main purpose is to improve source code readability and maintainability. If the replaced-text requires more than one line, the backslash ( $\)$  is used to indicate multiple lines.

```
• Example
```

#define TOTAL\_COUNT 40
#define USERNAME "Henry"
#define MAX(a,b) ((a>b)?a:b)

```
\rightarrow #error
```

```
• Syntax
```

**#error** message-string

• Description

The **#error** directive generates a user-defined diagnostic message, message-string.

• Example

```
#if TOTAL_COUNT > 100
#error "Too many count."
#endif
```

- → Conditional inclusion: #if #else #endif
  - Syntax

```
#if expression
    source codes
[#else
    source codes]
#endif
```

• Description

The **#if** and **#endif** directives pairs are used for conditionally compiling code depending upon the evaluation of the expression. The **#else** which is optional provides an alternative compilation method. If the expression is nonzero, then the source code below the **#if** statement will be compiled. Otherwise, the source code that follows the **#else** statement, if it exists, will be compiled.

• Example

```
#define MODE 2
#if MODE > 0
    #define DISP_MODE MODE
#else
    #define DISP_MODE 7
#endif
```



→ Conditional inclusion : #ifdef

```
• Syntax
```

```
#ifdef symbol
    source codes
[#else
    source codes]
#endif
```

• Description

The **#ifdef** directive is similar to the **#if** directive, except that instead of evaluating the expression, it checks if the specified symbol has been defined or not. The **#else** which is optional provides alternative compilation. If the Symbol is defined, then the source code below the **#ifdef** statement will be compiled. Otherwise, the source code that follows the **#else** statement, if it exists, will be compiled.

• Example

```
#ifdef DEBUG_MODE
#define TOTLA_COUNT 100
#endif
```

#### → Conditional inclusion : #ifndef

• Syntax

```
#ifndef symbol
    source codes
[#else
    source codes]
#endif
```

• Description

The **#ifndef** directive is similar to the **#ifdef** directive. The **#else** which is optional provides alternative compilation. If the symbol has not been defined, then the source code below the **#ifndef** statement will be compiled. Otherwise, the source code that follows the **#else** statement, if it exists, will be compiled.

• Example

```
#ifndef DEBUG_MODE
#define TOTAL_COUNT 50
#endif
```



#### Conditional inclusion: #elif

```
    Syntax
        #if expression1
            source codes

    #elif expression2
            source codes

    [#else
            source codes]

    #endif
```

• Description

The **#elif** directive is accompanied with the **#if** directive. It provides other compilation conditions in addition to the usual two. If the expression1 is nonzero, then the source code that exists below the **#if** statement will be compiled. If **expression1** is zero, then **expression2** is checked to see if it is nonzero. If so then the source codes that follows the **#elif** statement will be compiled. Otherwise, the source code that follows the **#else** statement, if it exists, will be compiled.

• Example

```
#if MODE==1
#define DISP_MODE 1
#elif MODE==2
#define DISP_MODE 7
#endif
```

#### → Conditional inclusion : defined

• Syntax

```
#if defined symbol
    source codes
[#else
    source codes]
#endif
```

• Description

The unary operator **defined** can be used within the directive **#if** or **#elif**. A control line of the form

#ifdef symbol

```
is equivalent to
```

#if defined symbol

A line of the form

#ifndef symbol

is equivalent to

#if !defined symbol



• Example

```
#if defined DEBUG_MODE
#define TOTAL_COUNT 50
#endif
```

#### $\rightarrow$ #undef

• Syntax

#undef symbol

• Description

The **#undef** directive causes the symbol's preprocessor definition to be erased. Once defined, a preprocessor symbol remains defined and in scope until the end of the compilation unit or until it is undefined using an **#undef** directive.

• Example

```
#define TOTAL_COUNT 100
...
#undef TOTAL_COUNT
#define TOTAL_COUNT 50
```

- $\rightarrow$  File inclusion: #include
  - Syntax

```
#include <file-name>
or
#include file-name
```

• Description

**#include** inserts the entire text from another file at this point in the source file. When **<file-name>** is used, the compiler looks for the file in the directory specified by the environment variable INCLUDE. If the IN-CLUDE is not defined, the C compiler looks for the file in the path. When **file-name** is used, the C compiler looks for the file as specified. If no directory is specified, the current directory is checked.

• Example

#include <ht48c10.inc>
#include ht8270.inc

- $\rightarrow$  Inline assembly: #asm and #endasm
  - Syntax

Inline assembly instructions can be included as follows:

#asm

. . .

<[label:] opcode [operands]>;

#endasm





• Description

The **#asm** and **#endasm** are the inline assembly preprocessor directives. The **#asm** directive inserts Holtek s assembly instruction(s) after this directive (or within the directive **#asm** and directive **#endasm**) into the output file directly.

• Example

#asm // convert low nibble value in the accumulator to ASCII
and a, Ofb

```
and a, Ofh
sub a, O9h
sz c
add a, 40h-30h-9
add a, 30h+9
#endasm
```

- $\rightarrow$  #line
  - Syntax

#line constant ["filename"]

• Description

The **#line** directive sets the predefined macro \_\_LINE\_\_, for the purpose of error diagnostics or symbolic debugging, such that the line number of the next source line is considered to be the given constant, which must be a decimal number. If the **filename** is given, \_\_FILE\_\_ is set to the file named. If **filename** is absent the remembered file name is not changed.

• Example

#line 20 ht48c10.asm

- → Machine dependence : #pragma
  - Syntax
     #pragma

#pragmaToken-String#pragmavector Symbol @ Address

• Description

The **#pragma** directive causes machine-dependent behavior when the Token-String is of a form recognized by the C compiler. The **#pragma** directive must end with a semicolon. An unrecognized pragma will be ignored. The vector is a valid pragma which sets up the location, Address, of an interrupt vector and assigns **Symbol** as the name of the vector. If a function of name Symbol is defined, that function executes when the corresponding interrupt occurs.



#### • Example

```
#pragma vector __INT @ 0x0004
void __INT(void) {
    ...
}
```

#### **Predefined names**

Several symbols are predefined and expanded to produce special information. These symbols cannot be undefined or redefined.

_LINE_	A decimal constant containing the current source line number
FILE	A string literal containing the name of the file being compiled
DATE	A string literal containing the date of compilation, in the form Mmmdd yyyy .
TIME	A string literal containing the time of compilation, in the form hh mm ss
STDC	The constant 1. It is intended that this symbol be defined to be 1 only in standard-conforming implementation.

# **Holtek C Compiler Specifics**

This section describes some fundamental requirements of the Holtek C compiler language. The topics are:

#### Using multiple source files Input/Output ports system calls Interrupts

#### Using multiple souce files

The Holtek C compiler supports multiple source files with only one source file containing the main() routine. C source files may be compiled one by one and all the object files linked to an execution file. The Holtek C compiler can compile all source files and link them all together.



#### Input/Output ports system calls

The Holtek C language provides the following system calls for accessing the input/output ports. These system calls are implemented without call instructions to reduce the number of stacks used.

#### $\rightarrow$ Input/Output ports

- unsigned char peekPX()
  - Read data from port X, X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G
  - Example

```
unsigned char i;
i= peekPA(); //read input value from the port A, saved in i
```

- void pokePX (unsigned char)
  - Write data to port X, X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G

```
- Example pokePC (0×00); //write a char 0×00 to the port C
```

#### → Read/Write control registers

- unsigned char peekPXC()
  - Read data from port X control register, X= A,B,C,D,E,F,G
  - Example

• void pokePXC (unsigned char)

write data to port X control register, X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G

```
- Example
pokePBC(0×20); //write a value of 0x20 to the control
//register of port B
```

#### $\rightarrow$ Set/Clear bits of ports

```
void setPX()
set port X, X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G
Example
setPD(); //set port D
void setPXi()
set bit i of port X, i=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 and X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G
Example
setPD3(); //set bit 3 of port D
void clrPX()
clear port X,X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G
Example
```

```
clrPC(); //clear port C
```



```
• void clrPXi()
      clear bit i of port X, i=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 and X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G
      - Example
        clrPB7(); //clear bit 7 of port B
\rightarrow Set/Clear bits of port control register
    • void setPXC()
      set port X control register, X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G
      - Example
        setPDC(); //set port D control register
    • void setPXCi()
      set bit i of port X control register, i=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 and X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G
      - Example
        setPEC3(); //set bit 3 of port E control register
    • void clrPXC()
      clear port X control register, X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G
    • vold ClrPXCi()
      clear bit i of port X control register, i=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 and
      X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G
      - Example
        clrPAC0(); //clear bit 0 of port A control register
        clrPCC4(); //clear bit 4 of port C control register
```

#### Interrupts

The Holtek C language provides a means for implementing interrupts vectors through the preprocessor directive #pragma. The directive #pragma vector is used to declare the name and address of the interrupt vectors. Any function with the same name as the interrupt vector is the interrupt service routine for the vector. The return statement within the interrupt service routine generates a RETI instruction. An example of interrupt is shown as follows:

```
#pragma vector __INT @ 0×0004
void __INT(void) {
    ...
}
```



# Difference between Holtek C and ANSI C

#### **Keywords**

The following keywords and qualifiers are not supported:

Keywords: float double Qualifiers: auto register static

#### Variables

All variables are static. The operator '@' can be used to specify the address of variables in the general purpose data memory. The offset of the memory starts from  $0\times 20$ . The syntax is:

data\_type varaible\_name @ memory\_location

For example:

unsigned char flag @ 0×25; /\* declare the flag in the offset  $_{\rm 0x25}$  of RAM \*/

#### Constants

Holtek C supports binary constants. Any string that begins with 0b or 0B will be treadted as a binary constant. For example:

0b101= 5 0b1110= 14

#### Functions

Avoid using reentrant and recursive code.

#### Arrays

Holtek C allows one dimensional arrays only. An array should be located in a contiguous block of memory and must not have more than 256 elements.

#### **Constant variables**

Constant variables must be declared in global scope and be initialized when declared. The size of all constant variables is limited to 255 bytes in the current version.



#### Initial value

Global variables cannot be initialized when declared. Local variables do not have this constraint. Constant variables must be initialized when declared.

#### For example:

```
unsigned int i1= 0; //illegal declaration; can not be
//initialized
unsigned int i2;
const unsigned int i3; //illegal declaration; should be
//initialized
const unsigned int i4=5;
const char a1[5]; //illegal declaration; should be
//initialized
const char a2[5]={0×1,0×2,0×3,0×4,0×5};
const char a3[]="abcde";
```

#### Multiply/Divide/Modulus

The multiply, divide and modulus ("\*", "/", "%") operators are implemented by system calls. It is necessary to include the math.lib library if these arithmetical operators are used. To include a library, select [options] in the main menu, select [project...], put the library name in the [libraries] field.

#### Stack

Because the Holtek HT48CX0 microcontrollers have from 2 to 8 stacks the programmer needs to consider the function call depth to avoid stack overflow. The multiply, divide and modulus of the Holtek C language are implemented by "call" instructions, taking one stack. The input/output port system functions are implemented without "call" instructions.

<b>Operator/System Function</b>	Stack Needed
main()	0
*	1
1	1
%	1
peekPX(), X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
peekPXC(), X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
pokePX(), X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
pokePXC(), X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
setPX(), X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
setPXi(), i=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 and X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
setPXC(), X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0

<b>Operator/System Function</b>	Stack Needed
setPXCi(), i=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 and X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
clrPX(), X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
clrPXi(), i=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 and X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
clrPX(), X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
clrPXi(), i=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 and X=A,B,C,D,E,F,G	0
constant array	1

# Holtek C Compiler

The Holtek C compiler supports the ability to write programs using mixed languages. To do this however there are certain rules that need to be followed.

#### **ASM calls C functions**

Variables in C language are case sensitive but they are non-case sensitive during the Holtek assembly process. As a result the name of the C function must be declared in capitals. Instead of using the stack, the Holtek C compiler uses RAM to pass arguments to functions. To call C functions in an assembly program, the names of functions and arguments must be declared as external. The names of C functions are translated into the name preceded with an under score. The names of arguments are translated into the function name following the number of the argument occurring. It is also necessary to declare all the internal variables (TMP, TREG, LH, LL, TLH, TLL, AREGTMP\_) used by the C functions. Since the Holtek C compiler supports multiple banks, it is necessary to adjust the BP before calling the C function.

To get the return value of the C function it is necessary to know the data size of the return value. If its size is one byte then the return value is stored in a register. If it is two bytes then the high byte is stored in LH and the low byte stored in a register.



• Example 1: Assume there is a C function void MAXMIN(long val) We want to call it from assembly. Be aware the function name MAXMIN is capital. \_MAXMIN  $\leftarrow$  the function name MAXMIN0  $\leftarrow$  the name of val argument ; Declares the function name and argument EXTERN MAXMIN:NEAR EXTERN MAXMIN0:BYTE ;It is ok to declare "byte" although val is "long" two bytes ; Declares internal variables used by C function CDataTmp .SECTION data PUBLIC TMP PUBLIC TREG PUBLIC LH PUBLIC LL PUBLIC TLH PUBLIC TLL PUBLIC AREGTMP TMP DB ? TREG DB ? LHDB ? LLDB ? TLH DB ? TLL DB ? AREGTMP DB ? code .section "code" ; Sets arguments MOV A, 0ah MOV MAXMINO, A MOV A,00h MOV MAXMINO[1], A



```
; Set BP
 ;=====
 MOV A,
         01FH
 ANDM A,
         [04H]
 MOV A,
         HIGH MAXMIN
 AND A,
         0E0H
 ORM A,
         [04H]
 ; Call C function
 CALL MAXMIN
• Example 2:
 Assume there is a C function
  long CFUNC(int a, int b, int c)
 We want to call it from assembly and put the return value in retval vari-
 able.
 _CFUNC \leftarrow the function name
 CFUNC0 \leftarrow the name of a argument
 CFUNC1 \leftarrow the name of b argument
 CFUNC2 \leftarrow the name of c argument
 ; Declares the function name and argument
 EXTERN CFUNC:NEAR
 EXTERN CFUNC0:BYTE
 EXTERN CFUNC1:BYTE
 EXTERN CFUNC2:BYTE
 ; Declares internal variables used by C function
 CDataTmp .SECTION data
 PUBLIC TMP
 PUBLIC TREG
 PUBLIC LH
 PUBLIC LL
 PUBLIC TLH
 PUBLIC TLL
```

```
PUBLIC AREGTMP_
TMP
           DB ?
TREG
          DB ?
           DB ?
LH
          DB ?
LL
           DB ?
TLH
TLL
           DB ?
AREGTMP_
          DB ?
retval DW ? ;to keep return value
code .section code
 .
; Sets arguments
;==================
MOV A,01h
MOV CFUNC0,A
MOV A,02h
MOV CFUNC1, A
MOV A,03h
MOV CFUNC2, A
; Set BP
;=====
MOV A,
        01FH
ANDM A, [04H]
MOV A, HIGH _CFUNC
AND A, OEOH
ORM A, [04H]
; Call C function
CALL _CFUNC
```

;get return value MOV retval,A ;store low byte MOV A,LH MOV retval[1],A ;store high byte C calls ASM functions

#### • Example 3:

```
In assembly programs
public _sum
public sum0, sum1
dl .section data
sum0 db ?
sum1 db ?
cl .section code
_sum proc
 mov a, sum0
 add a, suml
 ret
sum endp
public _join
public join1, join2
extern LH:byte
d2 .section data
join1 db ?
join2 db ?
c2 .section code
_join proc
 mov a,join0
 mov LH, a
```

mov LH, a
mov a, join
ret
\_join endp

# In C program

```
int SUM(int, int);
unsigned long JOIN(int, int);
void function()
{
    int a,b,c;
    unsigned long d;
    a = 0x10;
    b = 0x20;
    c = SUM(a, b);
    d = JOIN(a, b);
{
```

Chapter 10

HOLTEK

# Assembly Language and Cross Assembler

Assembly-Language programs are written as source files. They can be assembled into object files by the Holtek Cross Assembler. Object files are combined by the Cross Linker to generate a task file.

A source program is made up of statements, giving directions to the assembler at assembly time or to the processor at run time. Statements are constituted by mnemonics (operations), operands and comments.

# **Notational Conventions**

The following list describes the notations used by this document.

Example of convention	Description of convention
	Syntax elements that are enclosed by a pair of brackets are optional. For example, the syntax of the command line is as follows:
	HASM [options] filename [;]
[optional items]	<ul> <li>In the above command line, options and; are both optional, but filename is required, except for the following two cases:</li> <li>1. Brackets in the instruction operands. In this case, the brackets refer to memory address.</li> <li>2. Brackets in the interactive command mode. In this case, they are message separators.</li> </ul>



Example of convention	Description of convention
{choice1   choice2}	Braces and vertical bars stand for a choice be- tween two or more items. Braces enclose the choices whereas vertical bars separate the choices. Only one item can be chosen.
	Three dots following an item signify that more items with the same form may be entered. For example, the directive PUBLIC has the follow- ing form:
Repeating elements	PUBLIC name1 [,name2 [,]]
	In the above form, the three dots following name2 indicate that many names can be entered as long as each is preceded by a comma.

# **Statement Syntax**

The construction of each statement is as follows:

[name] [operation] [operands] [;comment]

- All fields are optional.
- Each field (except the comment field) must be separated from other fields by at least one space or one tab character.
- Fields are not case-sensitive, i.e., lower-case characters are changed to upper-case characters before processing.

#### Name

Statements can be assigned labels to enable easy access by other statements. A name consists of the following characters:

#### A~Z a~z 0~9 ? \_ @

with the following restrictions :

- $\bullet$  0~9 cannot be the first character of a name
- ? and \$ cannot stand alone as a name
- Only the first 31 characters are recognized

#### Operation

The operation defines the statement action of which two types exist, directives and instructions. Directives give directions to the assembler, specifying the manner in which the assembler is to generate the object code at assembly time. Instructions, on the other hand, give directions to the processor. They are translated to object code at assembly time, the object code in turn controlling the behavior of the processor at run time.

#### Operand

Operands define the data used by directives and instructions. They can be made up of symbols, constants, expressions and registers.

#### Comment

Comments are the descriptions of codes. They are used for documentation only and are ignored by the assembler. Any text following a semicolon is considered a comment.

# **Assembly Directives**

Directives give direction to the assembler, specifying the manner in which the assembler generates object code at assembly time. Directives can be further classified according to their behavior as described below.

#### **Conditional-Assembly directives**

The conditional block has the following form:

IF statements [ELSE statements] ENDIF

→ Syntax

IF expression
IFE expression

• Description

The directives  $\mathbf{IF}$  and  $\mathbf{IFE}$  test the expression following them.

The IF directive grants assembly if the value of the expression is true, i.e. non-zero.

The IFE directive grants assembly if the value of the expression is false, i.e. Zero.



• Example

```
IF debugcase
ACC1 equ5
extern username: byte
ENDIF
```

In this example, the value of the variable ACC1 is set to 5 and the username is declared as an external variable if the symbol debugcase is evaluated as true i.e. nonzero.

#### → Syntax

IFDEF name IFNDEF name

Description

The directives **IFDEF** and **IFNDEF** test whether or not the given name has been defined. The **IFDEF** directive grants assembly only if the name is a label, a variable or a symbol. The **IFNDEF** directive grants assembly only if the name has not yet been defined. The conditional assembly directives support a nesting structure, with a maximum nesting level of 7.

• Example

```
IFDEF buf_flag
buffer DB 20 dup(?)
ENDIF
```

In this example, the buffer is allocated only if the buf\_flag has been previously defined by the directive EQU or the option /D of the command line.

#### **File control directives**

#### → Syntax

**INCLUDE** file-name or **INCLUDE** "file-name"

• Description

This directive inserts source codes from the source file given by file-name into the current source file during assembly. HASM supports at most 7 nesting levels.

• Example

INCLUDE macro.def

In this example, the Cross Assembler inserts the source codes from the file macro.def into the current source file.



→ Syntax

**PAGE** size

• Description

This directive specifies the number of the lines of the program listing file. The page size must be within the range from 10 to 255, the default page size is 60.

• Example

PAGE 57

This example sets the maximum page size of the listing file to 57 lines.

- $\rightarrow$  Syntax
  - LIST
  - .NOLIST
  - Description

The directives **LIST** and **NOLIST** decide whether or not the source program lines are to be copied to the program listing file. **NOLIST** suppresses copying of subsequent source lines to the program listing file. **LIST** restores the copying of subsequenct source lines to the program listing file. The default is **LIST**.

- Example
  - .NOLIST mov a, 1 mov b1, a .LIST

In this example, the two instructions in the block enclosed by **NOLIST** and LIST are suppressed from copying to the source listing file.

#### $\rightarrow$ Syntax

.LISTMACRO .NOLISTMACRO

• Description

The directive **LISTMACRO** causes the assembler to list all the source statements, including comments, in a macro,. The directive **NOLISTMACRO** suppresses the listing of all macro expansions. The default is **NOLISTMACRO**.

#### $\rightarrow$ Syntax

.LISTINCLUDE .NOLISTINCLUDE

• Description

The directive **LISTINCLUDE** inserts the contents of all included files into the program listing. The directive **NOLISTINCLUDE** suppresses the addition of included files. The default is **NOLISTINCLUDE**.



#### → Syntax

**MESSAGE** "text-string"

Description

The directive **MESSAGE** directs the assembler to display the text-string on the screen. The characters in the text-string must be enclosed by a pair of single quotation marks.

#### **Program directives**

#### → Syntax (comment)

; text

• Description

A comment consists of characters preceded by a semicolon (;) and terminated by an embedded carriage-return/line-feed.

→ Syntax

.CHIP description-file

• Description

This directive enables the instruction set of the given microprocessor. The description-file is the name of a file which contains all information required by the Cross Assembler to assemble the source file. If no option /CHIP=description-file exists in the command line while assembling, this directive has to be used within the source file, otherwise an error will occur.

Note This directive must be located before the first instruction statement.

#### → Syntax

name .SECTION [align] [combine] "class"

• Description

The **SECTION** directive marks the beginning of a program section. A program section is a collection of instructions and/or data whose addresses are relative to the section beginning with the name which defines that section. The name of a section can be unique or be the same as the name given to other sections in the program. Sections with the same complete names are treated as the same section.

The optional align type defines the alignment of the given section. It can be one of the following:

BYTE	uses any byte address (the default align type)
WORD	uses any word address
PARA	uses a paragraph address
PAGE	uses a page address

# HOLTEK Chapter 10 Assembly Language and Cross Assembler

For the CODE section, the byte address is in a one instruction unit (14 bits for HT48100). **BYTE** aligns the section at any instruction address, **WORD** aligns the section at any even instruction address, **PARA** aligns the section at any instruction address which is a multiple of 16, and **PAGE** aligns the section at any instruction address with a multiple of 256.

For DATA sections, the byte address is in one byte units (8 bits/byte). **BYTE** aligns the section at any byte address, **WORD** aligns the section at any even address, **PARA** aligns the section at any address which is a multiple of 16, and **PAGE** aligns the section at any address which is a multiple of 256.

The optional combine type defines the way of combining sections having the same name (section and class name). It can be any one of the following:

- Common

Creates overlapping sections by placing the start of all sections with the same complete name at the same address. The length of the resulting area is the length of the longest section.

- AT address

Causes all label and variable addresses defined in a section to be relative to the given address. The address can be any valid expression except a forward reference. It is an absolute address in a specified ROM/RAM bank and must be within the ROM/RAM range.

If no combine type is given, the section is combinative, i.e., this section can be concatenated with all sections having the same complete name to form a single, contiguous section.

The class type defines the sections that are to be loaded in the contiguous memory. Sections with the same class name are loaded into the memory one after another. The class name "CODE" is used for sections stored in ROM, and the class name "DATA" is used for sections stored in RAM. The complete name of a section consists of a section name and a class name. The named section includes all codes and data below (after) it until the next section is defined.

**Note** Multiple sections can be defined in a source file, but any two sections with the same complete name are not permitted.



#### → Syntax

**ROMBANK** banknum section-name [, section-name,...]

• Description

This directive declares which sections are allocated to the specified ROM bank. The banknum specifies the ROM bank, ranging from 0 to the maximum bank number of the destination microcontroller, according to the directive .CHIP. The section-name is the name of the section defined previously in the program . More than one section can be declared in a bank as long as the total size of the sections does not exceed the bank size of 8K words. If this directive is not declared, bank 0 is assumed and all CODE sections defined in this program will be in bank 0. If a CODE section is not declared in any ROM bank, then bank 0 is assumed.

#### → Syntax

**RAMBANK** banknum section-name [,section-name,...]

Description

This directive is similar to ROMBANK except that it specifies the RAM bank.

#### → Syntax

END

• Description

This directive marks the end of a program. Adding this directive to any included file should be avoided.

#### → Syntax

**ORG** expression

• Description

This directive sets the location counter to expression. The subsequent code and data offsets begin at the new offset specified by expression. The code or data offset is relative to the beginning of the section where the directive ORG is defined. The attribute of a section determines the actual value of offset, absolute or relative.

• Example

ORG 8 mov A, 1

In this example, the statement mov A, 1 begins at location 8 in the current section.

# HOLTEK Chapter 10 Assembly Language and Cross Assembler

#### $\rightarrow$ Syntax

PUBLIC name1 [, name2 [, ...]]
EXTERN name1:type [, name2:type [, ...]]

• Description

The **PUBLIC** directive marks the variable or label specified by a name that is available to other modules in the program. The **EXTERN** directive, on the other hand, defines an external variable, label or symbol of the specified name and type. The type can be one of the four types: **BYTE**, **WORD** and **BIT** (these three types are for data variables), and **NEAR** (a label type and used by CALL or JMP).

• Example

```
PUBLIC start, setflag
EXTERN tmpbuf:byte
          .SECTION
CODE
                    CODE
start:
       mova, 55h
       call setflag
       . . . .
setflag
              proc
      movtmpbuf, a
       ret
setflag
              endp
end
```

In this example, both the label start and the procedure setflag are declared as public variables. Programs in other sources may refer to these variables. The variable tmpbuf is also declared as external. There should be a source file defining a byte that is named tmpbuf and is declared as a public variable.

#### → Syntax

name **PROC** 

name ENDP

Description

The PROC and ENDP directives mark a block of code which can be called or jumped to from other modules. The PROC creates a label name which stands for the address of the first instruction of a procedure. The assembler will set the value of the label to the current value of the location counter.

• Example

toggle	PROC
mov	tmpbuf, a
mov	a, 1
xorm	a, flag
mov	a, tmpbuf
ret	
toggle	ENDP



#### → Syntax

[label:] DC expression1 [, expression2 [, ...]]

Description

The **DC** directive stores the value of expression1, expression2 etc. in consecutive memory locations. This directive is used for the CODE section only. The bit size of the result value is dependent on the ROM size of the microcontroller, specified by the directive **.CHIP** or the command line parameter /CHIP=. The Cross Assembler will clear any redundant bits; expression1 has to be a value or a label. This directive may also be employed to set up the table in the code section.

Example

table1: DC 0128h, 025CH

In this example, the Cross Assembler reserves two units of ROM space and also stores 0128H and 025CH into these two ROM units.

#### Data definition directives

An assembly language program consists of one or more statements and comments. A statement or comment is a composition of characters, numbers, and names. The assembly language supports integer numbers. An integer number is a collection of binary, octal, decimal, or hexadecimal digits along with an optional radix. If no radix is given, the assembler uses the default radix (decimal). Table 9.1 lists the digits that can be used with each radix.

Radix	Туре	Digits
В	Binary	01
0	Octal	01234567
D	Decimal	0123456789
Н	Hexadecimal	0123456789ABCDEF

Table 9.1 Digits Used With Each Radix

#### → Syntax

```
[name] DB value1 [,value2 [, ...]]
[name] DW value1 [,value2 [, ...]]
[name] DBIT
[name] DB repeated-count DUP(?)
[name] DW repeated-count DUP(?)
```

• Description

These directives reserve the number of bytes/words specified by the repeated-count or reserve bytes/words only. value1, value2 should be ? due to the microcontroller RAM . The Cross Assembler will not initialize the RAM data. DBIT reserves a bit. The content ? denotes uninitialized data, i.e., reserves the space of the data. The Cross Assembler will gather every 8 DBIT together and reserve a byte for these 8 DBIT variables.



• Example

```
DATA .SECTION DATA
tbuf DB ?
chksum DW ?
flag1 DBIT
sbuf DB ?
cflag DBIT
```

In this example, the Cross Assembler reserves byte location 0 for thuf, location 1 for chksum, bit 0 of location 3 for flag1, location 4 for shuf and bit 1 of location 3 for cflag.

#### → Syntax

name **EQU** expression

• Description

The EQU directive creates absolute symbols, aliases, or text symbols by assigning an expression to name. An absolute symbol is a name standing for a 16-bit value; an alias is a name representing another symbol; a text symbol is a name for another combination of characters. The name must be unique, i.e, not having been defined previously. The expression can be an integer, a string constant, an instruction mnemonic, a constant expression, or an address expression.

• Example

accreg EQU 5 bmove EQU mov

In this example, the variable accreg is equal to 5, and bmove is equal to the instruction mov.

#### **Macro directives**

Macro directives enable a block of source statements to be named, and then that name to be re-used in the source file to represent the statements. During assembly, the assembler automatically replaces each occurrence of the macro name with the statements in the macro definition.

A macro can be defined at any place in the source file as long as the definition precedes the first source line that calls that macro. In the macro definition, the macro to be defined may refer to other macros which have been previously defined. The Cross Assembler supports a maximum of 7 nesting levels.

The syntax of a macro definition is as follows:

```
name MACRO [dummy-parameter [, ...]]
statements
ENDM
```

The assembler supports a directive LOCAL for the macro definition. Its syntax is

LOCAL dummy-name [, ...]

The LOCAL directive defines symbols available only in the defined macro. The dummy-name is a temporary name that is replaced by an unique name when the macro is expanded. The Cross Assembler creates a new actual name for dummy-name each time the macro is expanded. The actual name has the form ??digit, where digit is a hexadecimal number within the range from 0000 to FFFF. A label should be be added to the LOCAL directive when labels are used within the MACRO/ENDM block. Otherwise, the Cross Assembler will issue an error if this MACRO is referred to more than once in the source file.

In the following example, tmp1 and tmp2 are both dummy parameters, and are replaced by actual parameters when calling this macro. label1 and label2 are both declared LOCAL, and are replaced by ??0000 and ??0001 respectively at the first reference, if no other macro is referred. If no LOCAL declaration takes place, label1 and label2 will be referred to labels, similar to the declaration in the source program. At the second reference of this macro, a multiple define error message is displayed.

```
Delay MACRO tmp1, tmp2
   LOCAL
              label1, label2
   mov
           a, 70h
   mov
           tmp1, a
label1:
   mov
           tmp2, a
label2:
           wdt1
   clr
   clr
           wdt2
           tmp2
   sdz
   jmp
           label2
           tmp1
   sdz
           label1
   jmp
   ENDM
```

The following source program refers to the macro Delay ...

```
; T.ASM
; Sample program for MACRO.
.ListMacro
Delay MACRO tmp1, tmp2
LOCAL label1, label2
mov a, 70h
mov tmp1, a
label1:
mov tmp2, a
```

Chapter 10 Assembly Language and Cross Assembler

```
label2
       clr
              wdt1
       clr
              wdt2
       sdz
              tmp2
              label2
       jmp
              tmp1
       sdz
              label1
       jmp
       ENDM
data
     .section
                   data
BCnt
       db ?
SCnt
       db ?
code .section at 0
                          code
Delay BCnt, SCnt
end
```

The Cross Assembler will expand the macro Delay as shown in the following listing file. Note that the offset of each line in the macro body, from line 1 to line 17, is 0000. Line 24 is expanded to 11 lines and forms the macro body. In addition the formal parameters, tmp1 and tmp2, are replaced with the actual parameters, BCnt and SCnt, respectively.

File: t.asm Page 1	Holtek Cro	oss-Assembler	Version 2.10
1 0000	; T.ASM		
2 0000	; Sample pro	ogram for MACRO	).
3 0000	.ListMacro		
4 0000	Delay MACRO	tmp1, tmp2	2
5 0000	LOCAL	label1, la	abel2
6 0000	mov	a, 70h	
7 0000	mov	tmp1, a	
8 0000	label1:		
9 0000	mov	tmp2, a	
10 0000	label2:		
11 0000	clr	wdt1	
12 0000	clr	wdt2	
13 0000	sdz	tmp2	
14 0000	jmp	label2	
15 0000	sdz	tmp1	
16 0000	jmp	label1	
17 0000	ENDM		
18 0000			
19 0000	data .sectio	n data	
20 0000 00	BCnt db	?	
21 0001 00	SCnt db	?	
22 0002			
23 0000	code .sectio	n at 0 code	
24 0000	Delay BCnt,	SCnt	
24 0000 OF70	1 mov	a, 70h	
24 0001 0080	R1 mov B	Cnt, a	

24	0002		1 ??0000
24	0002	0080	R1 mov SCnt, a
24	0003		1 ??0001:
24	0003	0001	1 clr wdt1
24	0004	0005	1 clr wdt2
24	0005	1780	R1 sdz SCnt
24	0006	2803	1 jmp ??0001
24	0007	1780	R1 sdz BCnt
24	0008	2802	1 jmp ??0000
25	0009		end

0 Errors

# **Assembly Instructions**

The syntax of an instruction has the following form: [name:] Mnemonic [operand1[,operand2]] [;comment]

where

 $\begin{array}{ccc} name: & \rightarrow \text{label name} \\ Mnemonic \rightarrow \text{instruction name (keywords)} \\ operand1 \rightarrow \text{registers} \\ operand2 \rightarrow \text{registers} \\ & \text{memory address} \\ & \text{immediate value} \end{array}$ 

#### Name

A name is made up of letters, digits, and special characters, and is used as a label.

#### Mnemonic

Mnemonic is an instruction name dependent upon the type of the microcontroller used in the source program. The microcontroller type needs to be specified prior to the first instruction statement in the source program by using the directive .CHIP.

#### Operand, operator and expression

Operands (source or destination) are the argument defining values that are to be acted on by instructions. They can be constants, variables, registers, expressions or keywords. When using the instruction statements, care must be taken to select the correct operand type i.e. source operand or destination operand. The dollar sign \$ is a special operand, namely the current location operand.

An expression consists of many operands that are combined to describe a value or a memory location. The combined operators are evaluated at assembly time. They can contain constants, symbols, or any combination of constants and symbols that are separated by arithmetic operators.

Operators specify the operations to be performed while combining the operands of an expression. The assembler provides many operators to combine and evaluate operands. Some operators work with integer constants, some with memory values, and some with both. Operators handle the calculation of constant values that are known at the assembly time. The following are some operators provided by the assembler.

- Arithmetic operators + \* / % (MOD)
- $\bullet$  SHL and SHR operators
  - Syntax expression SHR count expression SHL count

The values of these shift bit operators are all constant values. The expression is shifted right (SHR) or left (SHL) by the number of bits specified by count. If bits are shifted out of position, the corresponding bits that are shifted in are zero-filled. The following are such examples:

mov A, 01110111b SHR 3 ; result ACC=00001110b
mov A, 01110111b SHL 4 ; result ACC=01110000b

• Bitwise operators NOT, AND, OR, XOR

NOT	is a bitwise complement.
AND	is a bitwise AND.
OR	is a bitwise inclusive OR.
XOR	is a bitwise exclusive OR.

OFFSET operator

- Syntax

**OFFSET** expression

The **OFFSET** operator returns the offset address of an expression. The expression can be a label, a variable, or other direct memory operand. The value returned by the OFFSET operator is an immediate operand.

• LOW and HIGH operator

- Syntax

LOW expression HIGH expression

The LOW/HIGH operator returns the value of an expression if the result of the expression is an immediate value. The LOW/HIGH operators will then take the low/high byte of this value. But if the expression is a label, the LOW/HIGH operator will take the values of the low/high byte of the program count of this label.

• Bank operator

- Syntax

BANK name

The BANK operator returns the bank number allocated to the section of the name declared. If the name is a label then it returns the rom bank number. If the name is a data variable then it returns the ram bank number. The format of the bank number is the same as the BP defined. For more information of the format please refer to the data sheets of the corresponding micro-controllers. (Note: The format of the BP might be different between micro-controllers.)

Example 1:

mov A, BANK label mov BP,A jmp label Example 2: mov A, BANK var mov BP,A mov A, OFFSET var mov MP1,A mov A,R1

#### • Operator precedence

Precedence	Operators
1 (Highest)	(), []
2	+, – (unary), LOW, MID, HIGH, OFFSET, BANK
3	*, /, %, SHL, SHR
4	+, (binary)
5	>, <=, <, <=
6	==, !=
7	! (bitwise NOT)
8	& (bitwise AND)
9 (Lowest)	(bitwise OR), ^(bitwise XOR)

## **Miscellaneous**

#### **Forward references**

The assembler allows reference to labels, variable names, and other symbols before they are declared in the source code (forward named references). But symbols to the right of EQU are not allowed to be forward referenced.

#### Local labels

A local label is a label with a fixed form such as \$digit. The digit can be '0', '1' ... To '9'. The function of a local label is the same as a label except that the local label can be used repeatedly. The local label should be used between any two consecutive labels and the same local label name may used between other two consecutive labels. The assembler will transfer every local label into a unique label before assembling the source file. At most 10 local labels can be defined between two consecutive labels. The following is an example.

Label1:		; label
\$1:		;; local label
	mova, 1	
	jmp \$3	
\$2:		;; local label
	mova, 2	
	jmp \$1	
\$3:		;; local labe
	jmp \$2	
Label2:		;; label
	jmp \$1	
\$0 <b>:</b>		;; local labe
	jmp Labell	
\$1:	jmp \$0	
Label3:		

### Reserved assembly language words

The following table lists all reserved words used by the assembly language.

• Reserved Names (directives, operators)

(directives, operators)					
\$	DBIT	IFNDEF	OFFSET		
*	DW	INCLUDE	OR		
+	ELSE	.LIST	ORG		
_	END	.LISTINCLUDE	PAGE		
	ENDIF	.LISTMACRO	PROC		
/	ENDM	LOCAL	PUBLIC		
=	ENDP	LOW	RAMBANK		
?	$\mathbf{E}\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{U}$	MACRO	ROMBANK		
[]	EXTERN	MOD	$\operatorname{SHL}$		
AND	HIGH	.NOLIST	$\operatorname{SHR}$		
BANK	$\mathbf{IF}$	.NOLISTINCLUDE	XOR		
.CHIP	IFDEF	.NOLISTMACRO			
DB	IFE	NOT			

• Reserved Names (instruction mnemonics)

	ADC	HALT	RLCA	SUB	
	ADCM	INC	RR	SUBM	
	ADD	INCA	RRA	SWAP	
	ADDM	$_{\rm JMP}$	RRC	SWAPA	
	AND	MOV	RRCA	SZ	
	ANDM	NOP	$\operatorname{SBC}$	SZA	
	CALL	OR	SBCM	TABRDC	
	$\operatorname{CLR}$	ORM	SDZ	TABRDL	
	$\operatorname{CPL}$	$\operatorname{RET}$	SDZA	XOR	
	CPLA	RETI	$\mathbf{SET}$	XORM	
	DAA	$\operatorname{RL}$	SIZ		
	DEC	RLA	SIZA		
	DECA	$\operatorname{RLC}$	SNZ		
• Reserved Names (registers names)					
	А	WDT	WDT1	WDT2	

Chapter 10 Assembly Language and Cross Assembler

# **Assembler Options**

The Cross Assembler options can be set via the Options menu Project command. The Assembler Options is located on the center part of the Project Option dialog box, as shown in Fig 3-13.

The symbols could be defined in the *define symbol* edit box. The syntax is symbol1[=value1] [, symbol2[=value2] [, ...]]

for example,

debugflag=1, newver=3

The check box of the Generate listing file is used to decide whether the listing file should be generated or not. If the check box is checked, the listing file will be generated. Otherwise, it won't be generated.

## Assembly Listing File Format

The Assembly Listing File contains the source program listing and summary information. The first line of each page is a title line which include company name, the Cross Assembler version number, source file name, date/time of assembly and page number.

#### Source program listing $\rightarrow$

Each line in the source program has the following syntax:

#### [line-number] offset [code] statement

- Line-number is the number of the line starting from the first statement in the assembly listing file (4 digits). A line number is generated only if a cross-reference file is required
- The 2nd field offset is the offset from the beginning of the current section to the code (4 digits)
- The 3rd field code is present only if the statement generates code or data (two 4-digit data)

The code shows the numeric value in hexadecimal if the value is known at assembly time. Otherwise, a proper flag will indicate the action required to compute the value. The following two flags may appear behind the code field.

- R  $\rightarrow$  relocatable addres (Linker must resolve) Е
  - $\rightarrow$  external symbol (Linker must resolve)

The following flag may appear before the code field

 $\rightarrow$  **EQU** or equal-sign directive

The following 2 flags may appear in the code field

 $\rightarrow$  section address (Linker must resolve)

 $nn[xx] \rightarrow DUP$  expression: nn DUP(?)

- The 4th field statement is the source statement shown exactly as it appears in the source file, or as expanded by a macro. The following flags may appear before a statement.
  - **n**  $\rightarrow$  Macro-expansion nesting level
  - **C**  $\rightarrow$  line from **INCLUDE** file
- Summary

=

 $0 \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6$ 

 $1234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890\ldots$ 

1111 oooo hhhh hhhh E C source-program-statement

Rn

 $1111 \rightarrow$  line number (4 digits, right alignment)

 $0000 \rightarrow \text{offset of code (4 digits)}$ 

 $hhhh \rightarrow two 4$ -digits for opcode

 $C \rightarrow$  statement from included file

 $n \rightarrow Macro expansion line$ 

- $E \rightarrow external \ reference$
- $R \rightarrow$  relocatable name

#### $\rightarrow$ Summary of assembly

The total warning number and total error number is the information provided at the end of the assembler listing file.

#### → Miscellaneous

If any errors occur during assembly, each error message and error number will appear directly below the statement where the error occurred.

#### $\rightarrow$ Example of assembly listing file

File: sample.asm Holtek Cross-Assembler Version 2.04 page .chip ht48100 1 0000 0000 2 3 0000 page 60 4 0000 message Sample Program 1 5 0000 6 0000 [12h] pa equ 7 0000 pac equ [13h] 8 0000 pb equ [14h]

HOLTEK Chapter 10 Assembly Language and Cross Assembler

9 0000 10 0000 11 0000 12 0000		pc	equ equ equ	[16h]	
13 0000 14 0000 15 0001 16 0002 17 0003	00	data b1 b2 bit1	db ? db ?		'data'
18 0000 19 0000 20 0001 21 0002 22 0003 23 0004 24 0005 25 0006 26 0007 27 0008 28 0009 29 000A 30 000B 31 000C	0FAA 0080 R 0F00 0093 0095 0097 0700 R 0092 0700 R		.secti a, 055 mov mov mov mov mov mov mov mov mov mov	h bl, a a, 0aah b2, a a, 0 pac, a pbc, a pcc, a a, b1 pa, a	'code'

0 Errors



Chapter 11

# **Cross Linker**



# What the Cross Linker Does

The Cross Linker, creates task programs from the object files generated by the Cross Assembler or the Holtek C compiler. The Cross Linker combines both code and data in the object files and searches the named libraries to resolve external references to routines and variables. It also locates the code and data sections at the specified memory address or at the default address, if no explicit address is specified. Finally, the Cross Linker copies both the program codes and other information to the task file. It is this task file that is loaded by the HT-IDE2000 Holtek Integrated Development Environment, into the Holtek HT-ICE In-Circuit Emulator, for debugging. The libraries included by the Cross Linker were generated by the Holtek library manager.

# **Cross Linker Options**

The options specify and control the tasks performed by Cross Linker. In chapter 3, Option Menu, Project command provides a dialog box, Linker Options, to specify these options to the Cross Linker. These options are:

## Libraries

- Syntax
  - libfile1[,libfile2...]

This option informs the Cross Linker to search the specified library files if the input object files refer to a procedure or variable which is not defined in any of the object files. If a module of a library file contains the referred procedure or variable, then only this module, not the whole library file will be included in the output task file. (refer to Chapter 12 Library Manager)

#### Section address

• Syntax

section\_name = address [, section\_name = address]...

This option specifies the address of the sections; section\_name is the name of the section that is to be addressed. The section\_name must be defined in at least one input object file, otherwise a warning will occur. The address is the specified address whose format is xxxx in hexadecimal format.

#### Generate map file

The check box of this option is to specify whether the map file is generated or not.

# Map File

The map file lists the names and loads the addresses and lengths of all sections in a program as well as listing the messages it encounters. The Cross Linker gives the address of the program entry point at the end of the map file. The map file also lists the names and loads addresses of all public symbols. The names and file name of the external symbols or procedures are recorded in the map file if no corresponding public symbol or procedure can be found. The contents of the map file are as follows.

```
Holtek (R) Cross Linker Version 3.20
Copyright (C) HOLTEK Microelectronics INC. 1997-1998. All
rights reserved.
Input Object File: C:\SAMPLE\T2.OBJ
Input Object File: C:\SAMPLE\T1.OBJ
Start
         End
               Length
                         Class
                                  Name
0000h
          00F2h 00F3h
                          CODE
                                   TEXT
                                           (C:\SAMPLE\T1.OBJ)
00F3h
         0114h 0022h
                       CODE
                                  SUB
                                           (C:\SAMPLE\T2.OBJ)
0000h
          0063h 0064h
                          DATA
                                  DAT
                                           (C:\SAMPLE\T1.OBJ)
AddressPublic by Name
001Ch
        BREAKL
00A4h
          CHKSTACK
         FAC DB
0042h
AddressPublic by Value
001Ch
          BREAKL
          FAC DB
0042h
00A4h
          CHKSTACK
HLINK: Program entry point at section code (address 0) of
        file C:\SAMPLE\T1.OBJ
<EOF>
```



# **HLINK Task File and Debug File**

One of the Cross Linker's output files is a task file which consists of two parts, a task header and binary code. The task header contains the Cross Linker version, the microcontroller name and the ROM code. The binary code part contains the program codes. The other Cross Linker output file is the debug file which contains all information referred to by the HT-IDE2000 debugging program. This information includes source file names, symbol names and line number as defined in the source files. The HT-IDE2000 will refer to the symbolic debugging function information. This file should not be deleted unless the debugging procedure is completed, otherwise the HT-IDE2000 will be unable to support the symbolic debugging function.



Chapter 12

# Library Manager



# What the Library Manager Does

The Library Manager, provides functions to process the library files. The library files are utilized in the creation of the output file by the Cross Linker. A library is a collection of one or more object modules which are assembled or compiled and ready for linking. It stores the modules that other programs may require for execution.

By using the Library Manager, library files can be created. Object files including common routines, may be added to the library files. Before creating these object files, the names of all common routines must be made public by using the assembly directive PUBLIC (refer to the chapter on AS-SEMBLY LANGUAGE). The Cross Assembler generates the output object file (.OBJ) while the Library Manager adds this object file into the specified library file. When the Cross Linker has found unresolved names in a program during the linking process, it will search the library files for these unresolved names, and extracts a copy of the module containing that name. If an unresolved name has been found in this library module, the module will be linked to the program.

# To Set Up the Library Files

The Library Manager provides the following functions:

- Create new library files
- Add/Delete a program module to/from a library file
- Extract a program module from a library file, and create an object file

To select use the Tools Menu and the Library Manager command as shown in Fig 12-1. Fig 12-2 shows the dialogue box for processing the functions of the Library Manager.



##HT-IDE - C:\HT-IDE\SAMPLE\S	AMPLE.PRJ	
<u>File Edit View Project Debug</u>	<u>T</u> ools <u>Options</u> <u>W</u> indo	w <u>H</u> elp
	<u>M</u> ask Option	RRA 22 🖬 🕅
	<u>D</u> iagnose	
	<u>O</u> TP programmer	
	<u>L</u> ibrary Manager	
	VROM Editor	
	Download Voice	
		-
Activate library manager	PC=0001H	

Fig 12-1

ILIBW			×
Library Name: *.lib		Open	Quit About
Object in Library:		Object in Dire	ectory:
	ADD		
	EXTract		
	Delete		
	Delete		
Objects' information :		Directories: c:\ht-ide\sam	ple
		[] [chap13] [chap15] [chap16]	▲ ▼
		Drives:	
		[-C-]	$\checkmark$

Fig 12-2



# Create a new library file

Press Open button, Fig 12-3 is displayed

Type in a new library file name and press the OK button, Fig 12-4 is displayed for confirmation. If the Yes button is chosen, a new library file will be created but will not contain any program modules.

Open		? ×
File <u>n</u> ame:	Eolders: c:\ht-ide\sample c:\ c:\ ht-ide sample	OK Cancel N <u>e</u> twork
List files of <u>type:</u> Library Files (*.LIB)	Dri <u>v</u> es: c: e-testing	•

Fig 12-3

Open	×	<
٢	newlib.lib This file does not exist. Do you want to create it?	
<u>[</u>	es <u>N</u> o	
	Fig 12-4	

#### Add a program module into a library file

Select an object module from the Object in Directory box, and press the [ADD] button to add this object module into this library file.

#### Delete a program module from a library file

Select an object module from the Object In Library box, and press the [Delete] button to delete this object module from the library file.

#### Extract a program module from library and create an object file

Select an object module from the Object in Library box, and press [EX-Tract] button. A file will then be created with the same name, and same content as the selected object module. It is displayed on the Object in Directory box.

#### **Object module information**

Press the Open button, Fig 12-3 is displayed. Select a library file from the box below the File name box, press OK button. From Fig 12-2, all the object modules of the selected library file are listed in the Object in Library box. The following information about each object module is also listed in the Objects Information box.

• Maximum ROM size

The maximum size used by this object module program code. Dependent upon the code section align type.

• Minimum ROM size

The minimum actual size used by this object module program code

• Maximum RAM size

The maximum size used by this object module program data. It depends on the data section align type.

• Minimum RAM size

The minimum, actual size used by this object module program data.

• Public Name

The name of all public symbols in this object module.



Part III Utilities

Part III

# Utilities

In addition to the previously discussed general purpose 8-bit microcontroller development tools, Holtek also supplies several other utilities for its range of special purpose Voice and LCD microcontroller devices. By supplying all the necessary tools and step by step guide for relevant simulation of voice synthesis and tone generator applications as well as the tools for real time hardware LCD panel simulation. This section contains all the information needed to program and debug relevant applications quickly and efficiently.



Chapter 13

# μC VROM Editor (HT-VDS827)

13

# Introduction

The HT827XX series of processors are 8-bit high performance microcontrollers with voice synthesizers and tone generators. Holtek provides a HT-VDS827 utility software package that compresses speech source files, with formats such as .WAV, .PCM or ADPCM files, in order to save voice ROM space. An uncompressed binary file can also be loaded as an LCD pattern file.

In the following sections, a quick overveiw for the  $\mu C$  voice microcontrollers is given. The voice ROM editor, HT-Voice Editor and HT-Bin Editor is explained in more detail.

# Quick Start for $\mu$ C Voice Microcontrollers

The purpose of this section is to quickly obtain familiarisation with the  $\mu$ C Voice Development System. If this is the first time that the system is used we strongly recommend that you read this section first and follow the *step-by-step guide*.

In this section, a step-by-step guide is first introduced, followed by the resources supported by the system and several examples which are explained in detail. Finally, in the last part of this section, some useful information is provided.

## Step-by-Step guide

In order to create a voice microcontroller application, it is necessary to create a new project and edit sound tracks to be used within the program, before writing the application program.



Taking the HT82770 as an example:

 $\rightarrow$  Step 1

Enter the HT-IDE2000

- For Windows 3.1
  - C:win <Enter>
  - Double click the icon Holtek HT-IDE2000
  - Double click the icon  $\operatorname{HT-IDE2000}, \$  the HT-IDE2000 environment is displayed
  - Press the [OK] button when the dialog box Simulator is connected is displayed
- For Windows 95
  - Click the Start button, select Programs, then select Holtek HT-IDE2000
- Click the HT-IDE2000 icon
- Press the [OK] button when the dialog box Simulator is connected is displayed

#### → Step 2

Create a new project

- Select the Project menu, New command.
- Type the project name (example: Sample) and select the Microcontroller (Example <u>HT82770</u>).
- Press the [OK] button. The project SAMPLE will be created and a Mask Option window (Mask Option for <u>HT82770</u>) is displayed.
- Change the option selection according to the application project.
- Press the [SAVE] button to save the mask options.

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 3

Add the voice sources

• Invoke the voice ROM editor, HTVDS827.EXE, by selecting the Tools menu, then the VROM Editor command.

The Body Type box located on the left bottom side will display ' $\underline{HT82770}$ ' which means that voice sources for the HT82770 will be used.

• Add the voice sources

Browse from the right hand side of the main window to locate the voice sources and add some into the Sound List box by pressing the Add button which is located in the centre of the main window.

• Store the voice ROM data

Store the file by selecting the File menu, Save command of the HTVDS827.EXE.





• Quit the HTVDS827.EXE.

## → Step 4

Download the voice ROM data by selecting Tools menu, Download Voice command. The voice ROM data is now downloaded into the HT-ICE.

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 5

Create/Modify the source files for the application. Here a source file must be provided. The following is an example ...

; t.asm ;	; 1 ; 2
#include voice.inc	; 3 include the file voice.inc
code .section at 0 code	; 4
org 0	; 5
jmp begin	; 6
org 8	; 7
jmp AdpcmISR	; 8 specify the ISR for sampling rate
begin:	; 9
speech 0, 12H, 1	; 10
set [22H]	; 11 turn on the volume
jmp \$	; 12
end	; 13

This program is used to play the first track which is edited by the VROM Editor.

## $\rightarrow$ Step 6

Add the source files to the project

Add the above example, T.ASM, into this new project.

- Select the Project menu, Edit command
- Double click the file t.asm created on the previous step.

### $\rightarrow$ Step 7

Change the HT-IDE2000 working mode.

The HT-IDE2000 shall be working in emulation mode.

- Select the Options menu, Debug command
- Click the Emulation radio button in the Mode box

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 8

Build the project

• Select the Project menu, Rebuild All command If everything is OK, the current line cursor will stop on the first line to be executed. The program code has now been downloaded into the HT-IDE2000 and the voice ROM is ready. The program can now be executed.

The first track added into the voice ROM can now be heard. It is now replayed by the  $\mu C$  Voice System.

#### Resources supported by the development system

In this section, all supported resources are first introduced first after which the details behind their usage is described. The section conlcludes with a quick reference of all supported resources.

#### $\rightarrow$ Compressing/Decompressing algorithms provided

Once a  $\mu$ C voice type IC project has been completed, for example for the HT82700, the Voice ROM Editor (HTVDS827.EXE) is then ready to edit sound tracks. There are four different compressing algorithms supported by the Voice ROM Editor, such as 3-bit ADPCM, 4-bit ADPCM, 6-bit PCM and 8-bit PCM. Different compression methods can be specified to compress sound tracks. If the Voice ROM editor is invoked and the voice ROM data is stored, several files are created. Among these files, the *voice.inc* contains the compression method used to compress tracks. According to this file, the development system can link to some corresponding decompressing algorithms. There are other functions or control flags defined in this file. With these decompressing algorithms, short and simple program can easily be written to control track playing. This file must be included in the program, if these decompressing algorithms are to be used.

Because each of these supporting decompression algorithms consumes a significant amount of limited system resources, they cannot all be combined together. That is, 3-bit ADPCM and 4-bit ADPCM cannot be combined. With this excepton, any other supported decompressing algorithms can be combined together to get the best quality for the application. The  $\mu$ C Voice System also provides a quick mode for either 3-bit ADPCM or 4-bit ADPCM. Though decompressing in this quick mode will consume a little more program ROM space, the sampling rate could be much higher than in the normal mode. The default status is in the normal mode.

The following lists the resources used and the maximum sampling rates of each decompression algorithm.



Decommon	Resources Used Maxim		Maximum	um Possible	
Decompression Algorithm	RAM	ROM, total	ROM, last page	Sampling Rate	Combined Algorithms
3-bit ADPCM	18	333	49	8.0kHz	ADPCM3, PCM6, PCM8
3-bit ADPCM, QUICK	15	459	196	11.0kHz	ADPCM3, PCM6, PCM8
4-bit ADPCM	17	309	32	7.5kHz	ADPCM4, PCM6, PCM8
4-bit ADPCM, QUICK	14	509	256	11.0kHz	ADPCM4, PCM6, PCM8
PCM	12	186	0	16.0kHz	PCM6, PCM8

Table: The decompressing algorithms and the resources used.

Each of these decompressing algorithms is implemented in an interrupt service routine and shall be invoked each time the sampling rate counter overflows. In these decompressing algorithms, the voice ROM data is accessed, the decompressing action is taken and the decompressed data is then sent to the D/A output.

Since there is no other function called in the decompressing algorithms, the ISR could be invoked once when the sampling rate counter overflows and the stack is not full. In the ISR, the value of the accumulator and the status registers are preserved but the value of the following registers might be changed: TBLP(07H), TBLH(08H), DAL(20H), DAH(21H), ROMC(2CH).

**Important** Since the registers TBLP and TBLH might be changed in the ISR, it is important to disable the sampling rate interrupt when using table lookup instructions TABRDC or TABRDL.

#### $\rightarrow$ Decompression algorithms usage

If it is required to use all of these decompression algorithms, the file "voice.inc" must be included and then the ISR specified for the sampling rate counter interrupt in the program. Any other resources supported are intended to assist with customising the sound track playing. A sample program follows to explain this ...

```
; t.asm ; 1
; 
#include voice.inc ; 3 include file voice.inc
code .section at 0 code ; 4
org 0 ; 5
jmp begin ; 6
```

```
8
                              ; 7
   org
           AdpcmISR
                             ; 8 Specify ISR
   jmp
                             ; 9
begin:
speech 0, 12H, 1
                             ; 10
       [22H]
                              ; 11 Turn on the volume
set
jmp
       $
                              ; 12
end
                              ; 13
```

The file "voice.inc" is included at line 3 and the ISR is specified at line 8. The symbol AdpcmISR is predefined in the file "voice.inc". The sampling rate counter interrupt is located at interrupt vector 2 or ROM absolute address 8.

Since there is no other function called in the ISR, it is not necessary to be concerned about the status of the stack. If there are other functions that have to be performed when the sampling rate counter overflows, they can be joined together by jumping first to application specific functions and at the end of that function jump to AdpcmISR. For example,

```
; example.asm
;
code .section at 0 code
   org
           0
    jmp
           begin
    org
           8
    jmp
           MyFirstIsr
begin:
    . . . . . .
MyFirstIsr:
    . . . . . .
   jmp MySecondIsr
    . . . . . .
MySecondIsr:
    . . . . . .
   jmp AdpcmISR
    . . . . . .
   end
```



- **Note** Since all the algorithms are implemented using a relocatable style, applications should be designed by following the same style as mentioned in the HT-IDE2000 User's Guide. This relocatable style programming is based on the section concept. Trying to specify the absolute address without following this style might result in a RAM conflict and cause run-time errors.
  - The file "voice.inc" which is generated by the VROM editor is placed in the same directory with the project file. The assember source code and project file should be placed together so that the include file can be included correctly.
  - Once the VROM editor has been re-invoked and another compression algorithm chosen for some sound tracks, always remember to rebuild the project again. This is because the include file "voice.inc" may have been changed.

If everything has been prepared as mentioned above, the playing sound can be controlled in the program. Here, one macro and three flags are provided, the *speech* macro, the *standby* flag, the *pause* flag and the *stop* flag. The following gives a more detailed explanations.

• The AdpcmQuickMode symbol

The quick mode on for either 4-bit ADPCM or 3-bit ADPCM can be turned on by defining the symbol "AdpcmQuickMode" in your program. This symbol shall be defined before the "voice.inc" is included. Programs running in this mode will consume a little more program ROM space, but the sampling rate could be much higher than in the normal mode. For example:

#define AdpcmQuickMode
#include voice.inc
.....

Note The quick mode is only available for ADPCM.

#### • The *speech* macro

Generally, the *speech* macro is used to play edited sound tracks. It is defined in the included file, "voice.inc". The syntax of the *speech* is ...

**speech** *TrackNumber, SamplingRate, VoiceDown* where,

TrackNumber

is the number of the sound edited, beginning with 0. Refer to the

.NUM file for a listing of all voice resources. It is generated by the

HTVDS827.EXE.

#### SamplingRate

is used to specify the sampling rate counter.

#### VoiceDown

is used to reduce power consumption.

Each of these three parameters can be left empty.

Note that **speech** initializes certain variables and turns on the sampling rate counter interrupt. Then, when the sampling rate counter overflows, the decompression algorithm is invoked.

In the *speech* macro the sampling rate interrupt will be enabled, two level stacks will be used, the flag tempo.7 is set (setting this flag is to enable the D/A output, sampling rate counter and counter ROM) and the value of the following registers may be changed: Accumulator (05H), Status (0AH), ROMC (2CH.)

If the *TrackNumber* is left empty, the *speech* will not initialise the track number register which is used by the decompression algorithms.

Because the parameter *SamplingRate* is used to specify the sampling rate control register (located at RAM 23H), if it is left empty, *speech* will not change the value of that register. For example, if there is only one sampling rate in the application, it can be initialized at the beginning of the program and left empty in all of the following *speech* macro. The following paragraph demonstrates this ...

```
code .section at 0 "code"
   org
           0
           begin
    jmp
   org
           8
    jmp
           AdpcmISR
begin:
   mov
           a, 12H
   mov
           [23H], a
                          ; Sampling rate counter is set to 8MHz
    . . . . . .
   speech 0, ,1
```

```
......
speech 1, ,1
.....
end
```

The parameter *VoiceDown* could also be left empty. If it is non-empty, no matter what symbol it has, the voice down mode is enabled. Otherwise, if it is left empty, the voice down mode is disabled. Enabling the voice down mode will cause the register DAH and DAL to be set to zero and thus reduce power consumption after the sound track is performed. For example,

```
.....
speech 0,, ; After track 0 is played, the system will not
.....; go into voice down mode
speech 1,,1; After track 1 is played, the system goes into
....; voice down mode.
```

• The *standby* flag

The *standby* flag is a one-bit, read only flag which indicates the playing status. It will be set if the decompression algorithm is on standby and is waiting for some tracks to be played. For example to demonstrate usage of this flag, if there are five tracks recorded in the voice ROM and all have to be played one by one, the following short program can be used.

```
Ζ
   equ
          [OAH].2
#include voice.inc
code .section at 0 code
   orq
          0
   jmp
          begin
   org
          8
          AdpcmISR
   jmp
begin:
          [22H]
   set
          TrackNo
   clr
NextTrack:
   Speech , 12H, 1
waiting:
          standby
   snz
          waiting
   jmp
          TrackNo
   inc
   mov
          a, TrackNo
          a, 5
   xor
          7.
   snz
          NextTrack
   jmp
   jmp
          Ś
```

```
Important The standby flag is READ ONLY. Changing it may cause unpredictable results.
```

#### • The *pause* flag

The *pause* flag is a one-bit flag used to pause the playing. If it is set, the performance is stopped temporarily until it is reset. The following program use port A bit 0 to toggle pause mode when playing.

```
; Example of toggling the pause flag
; Pa.O is configured as input, pull-high and a switch button is
; connected
; between pa.0 and VSS.
 pa equ [12h]
acc equ [05h]
 acc equ
               [05h]
#include voice.inc
code .section at 0 code
            0
   ora
   jmp
            begin
   org
            8
            AdpcmISR
   jmp
begin:
            [22H]
   set
again:
   speech 0, 12H, 1
waiting:
   SZ
            standby
   jmp
            again
   SZ
            pa.0
   jmp
            waiting
   clr
            acc
Loop:
   sdz
            acc
   jmp
            Loop
            pa.0
   SZ
            waiting
   jmp
            pause
                         ; toggle pause
   SZ
   jmp
            ps1
            pause
   set
            PaORelease
   jmp
ps1:
   clr
            pause
PaORelease:
                          ; wait until pa.0 release
          pa.0
   snz
            PaORelease
   jmp
   jmp
            waiting
   end
```

• The *stop* flag

The *stop* flag is a one-bit flag used to terminate the playing. If it is set, the performance is stopped. Playing has to be restarted if this flag is used to terminate playing. In the following program, the playing is terminated if port A bit 0 is set low for a short period of time.



; Example of stop playing by setting the stop flag ; In this example, bit 0 of port A is configured as input,pull-; high and a switch button is connected between pa.0 and VSS. [12h] pa equ acc equ [05h] #include voice.inc code .section at 0 'code' org 0 begin jmp 8 org jmp AdpcmISR begin: [22H] set again: speech 0, 12H, 1 waiting: SΖ standby jmp again SZ pa.0 jmp waiting clr acc Loop: sdz acc jmp Loop SZ pa.0 jmp waiting set stop ; stop \$ jmp end

## **Quick reference**

• AdpcmQuickMode

Used to turn on quick mode for either 3-bit ADPCM or 4-bit ADPCM. Define before voice.inc is included.

Usage,

#### #define AdpcmQuickMode

For example,

```
#define AdpcmQuickMode
#include voice.inc
.....
```

Pause
 A one-bit flag used to pause playing.
 Usage,
 clr pause
 or
 set pause
 or
 sz pause
 or
 snz pause

For example, to pause play until bit 0 of port A is turned low ...

```
set pause
sz pa.0
jmp waiting
clr pause
```

• Speech

A macro used to play the sound tracks.

Usage,

speech TrackNo, SamplingRate, VoiceDown

For example, to play the first track,  $8\rm kHz$  (assuming the system frequency is  $4\rm MHz$ ), then

speech 0, 12H, 1

• Standby

A one-bit, read only flag indicates the status of playing. If it is set, a sound track has been playing.

Usage,

sz standby

or

snz standby

For example, to set port A high when the microcontroller is on standby ...

waiting: snz standby jmp waiting set pa .....

Stop
 A one bit flag used to stop playing.
 Usage,
 clr stop
 or
 or
 set stop
 or
 sz stop
 or
 snz stop

For example, to stop playing when bit 0 of port A is low ...

```
Waiting:
sz pa.0
jmp waiting
set stop
.....
```

# Using the VROM Editor

This chapter outlines the file types that the HT-VDS827 creates, then briefly describes the menu commands and how to construct a .VPJ file.

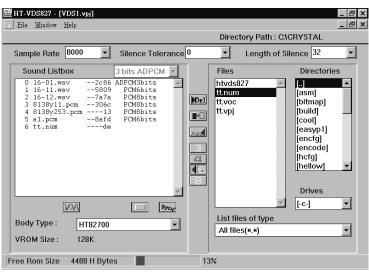


Fig 13-1: Main screen of HT-VDS827



# File type

The Holtek HT-VDS827 creates three kinds of files.

- VPJ project file, which contains the voice source file and other information.
- VOC file is for downloading, which must be returned to Holtek.
- NUM text file, which contains the starting address of the voice file and the compression method used. This file can be used for error checking.

#### Creating a new .VPJ file

 $\rightarrow$  Step 1

In the main screen of the HT-VDS827, choose the New command from the File menu to create a new project.

 $\rightarrow$  Step 2

From the Body Type Selection Box, select a body to meet the desired requirement. Each body has its corresponding voice ROM space as shown below:

Body	Voice Rom Space (Byte)
HT827A0	128K
HT827D0	$64\mathrm{K}$

HT-VDS827 - [C.\HT-IDE\BIN\MILLEN.VPJ]	
Eile Window Help	_ <u>-</u> 본 × Directory Path : C:\HT-IDE\BIN
Sample Rate 8000 Silence Toleran	ce 0 Length of Silence 32 💌
Sound Listbox 6 bits PCM 💌	Files Directories
0 16-01.wav2c86 ADPCM3bits	
	Drives
Body Type : HT82700	List files of type
VROM Size : 128K	Wave Files (*.WAV)
Free Rom Size 1d377 H Bytes	91%



If none of the body types meet the requirements, select Ext. VROM command from the Body Type Selection Box, and fill the desired VROM size in the dialog box as shown below.

Ext. VROM Size		×
Please input the size:		к
Cancel	OK	

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 3

Select the appropriate model to compress the source voice file. The voice quality must be sacrificed in order to save the voice ROM space. There is a trade-off between compression model and sound quality. Four compression models are available:

3-bit ADPCM 4-bit ADPCM 6-bit PCM 8-bit PCM

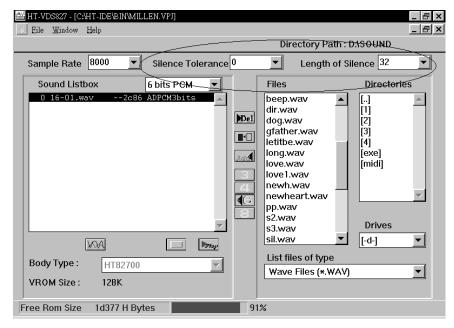
HT-VDS827 - [C:\HT-IDE\BIN\MILL]	EN.VPJ]		_ 문 ×
		Directory Path : D	
Sample Rate 8000 💌	Silence Tolerance 0	✓ Length of Sile	ence 32 💌
	6 bits PCM	Files beep.wav dir.wav dog.wav gfather.wav letitbe.wav love.wav love.wav love.wav hewh.wav hewh.wav hewheart.wav pp.wav s2.wav s3.wav sil.wav List files of type Wave Files (*.WAV)	Directories
Free Rom Size 1d377 H Byte	es gi	1%	





#### $\rightarrow$ Step 4

Different settings of silence tolerance and length of silence lead to different compression results. Changing the length of silence and the silence tolerance changes the compressed file length and the free ROM size, because silence has a concise compression format. Four lengths of silence and thirteen silence tolerances are available.



#### → Step 5

Select the working drive and directory from the right sub-window of the main window, then choose the file type of the source voice code. Three kinds of Voice files are supported:

wave file (\*.WAV) 16-bit PCM files (\*.PCM) 8-bit PCM files (\*.PCM)

If All files (\*.\*) is chosen, the file will be treated as a binary file without compression.

### $\rightarrow$ Step 6

To compress the files in the files list box, double click the file, or choose the file first and then press the button  $\blacksquare$ . The mouse can also be dragged or press the button  $\blacksquare$  to select all files and then press the button  $\blacksquare$  to compress all files together. The compressed files are listed in the Sound List Box.

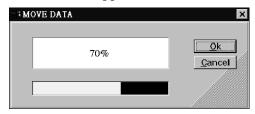


The sound list box displays the file name, compressed file size, and the compression model used in their processing order. The files with All files (\*.\*)/List files of type item selected, will not be compressed by any kind of compression model.

 $\rightarrow$  Step 7

 $\rightarrow$ 

The order of the compressed files can be changed by dragging the file with the right mouse key, and dropping it at the desired place. When dropping the file, a Move Data window appears:



#### Step 8

The compression model of a compressed file can easily be changed by selecting the file, and choosing the desired compression model from the combo box.

**Note** 4-bit ADPCM and 3-bit ADPCM cannot exist at the same time.

HT-VDS827 - [C:\HT-IDA	E\BIN\MILLEN.VPJ]				₽ ×
The Window Help			Directory Path :		
Sample Rate 8000	Silence Toleranc	e0 💌	Length of :	Silence 32	-
Sound Listbox 0 16-01.wav 1 dog.wav 2 beep.wav 3 newheart.wav 5 pp.wav 6 stereo.wav 7 silence.wav 8 72.wav 9 7v2d.wav a 8.wav	3 bits ADPCM 2c86 ADPCM3bits1daa PCM6bits	File T.w. T.w. T.w. T.w. T.w. T.w. R12 R12 R12 R12 R12 R12 R12 R12		Directories	
	28K	25%		• <b>•</b>	-
Free Rom Size 847	'8 H Bytes 📃 🔜	25%			



#### → Step 9

A voice or a data file may be edited by selecting the desired file first, and then pressing the button in the HT-VDS827 will auto-detect the file type and open the files with either the HT-Voice Editor or the HT-Binary Editor. After saving the changes and closing the editor, the HT-VDS827 will reload the data automatically.

For more information about the HT-Voice Editor and the HT-Binary Editor, refer to the following sections.

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 10

To save the current edited project, select the Save As command from the File menu. The Save As command creates three files, .VPJ, .VOC, and .NUM. Selecting the Print... command prints a table which shows the compressed file name, the starting address of the file in the voice ROM and the compression model used.

No.	File Name	Starting Address	Compression
0	7v2d.wav	00000015	3ADPCM
1	8k.wav	000010AE	3ADPCM
2	beep.wav	00001E83	3ADPCM
3	holtek0.wav	00001EEA	3ADPCM

The bottom box of the main screen displays the percentage of free ROM size in real time.

🞬 HT-VDS827 - [C:\HT-IDE\BIN\MIL	LEN.VPJ]		_ 문 ×
Eile Window Help			_ & ×
		Directory Path : D:\S	OUND
Sample Rate 8000 💌	Silence Tolerance 0	✓ Length of Silene	ce 32 💌
Sound Listbox	3 bits ADPCM 💌	Files	Directories
1 dog.wav1daa 2 beep.wavc7 3 newheart.wavc19 4 newh.wav844 5 pp.wav844 6 stereo.wav2bf 7 silence.wave93c 8 72.wav59e	PCM6bits PCM6bits PCM6bits ADPCM3bits ADPCM3bits ADPCM3bits ADPCM3bits ADPCM3bits ADPCM3bits ADPCM3bits	BAwav [4 812d2.wav [4 812d3.wav [4 812d4.wav [4 8k.wav at.wav beep.wav dir.wav dog.wav gfather.wav	1] 2] 3]
Free Rom Size 8478 H Byte	es 2	5%	

### Play with sample rate

HT-VDS827 compression tool also provides an on-line play function if a sound card is installed. To listen to the sound of the compressed voice file, select a compressed file in the sound list box and press the button **Prov**. Press the button **to** stop. The sampling rate of the playing sound can be adjusted by selecting the appropriate sampling rate. If it is required to listen to the original sound of the source file, double click the source file in the Files list box with the right mouse. This function allows the sound before and after compression to be compared and the best choice made.

#### File menu

The File pop-up menu consists of New, Open, Save as... and Print... commands.

 $\rightarrow$  New

Create a new project.

#### $\rightarrow$ Open

Open an existing project.

VOC file must exist in the same directory with .VPJ file. If not, the HT-VDS827 will create a new one.

#### $\rightarrow$ Save As...

Save the current edited project under a new file name.

#### $\rightarrow$ Print...

Print the result including the file name, the starting address, and the compression methods used.

## Window menu

The Window menu consists of Tile, Cascade, Arrange Icons, and Close All commands.

 $\rightarrow$  Tile

Tile all opened files on the screen.

 $\rightarrow$  Cascade

Cascade all opened files on the screen.

 $\rightarrow$  Close All

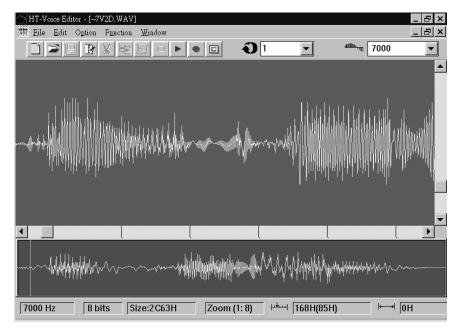
Close all the opened project files.

 $\rightarrow$  Arrange lcons

Arrange all icons.

# Using the HT-Voice Editor

The main screen of HT-Voice Editor is shown below. This chapter explains how to edit a wave file, and describes all the files and the menu commands.





### **New/Record command**

 $\rightarrow$  Step 1

To create a new voice file, select the New command from the File menu.

 $\rightarrow$  Step 2

To record, select the Record command from the Function menu, or press

button (if a sound card and microphone are installed), a Record Func-

Record Function Dialog	×
File name: HOLTEK	0.WAV
Sampling Rate : 44110	
Bits per Sample	Channel Selection
8 bits per sample	© Mono
©16 bits per sample	O Stereo
<u>B</u> egin	Cancel

tion Dialog screen appears:

Fill out the dialog box: File Name, Sample Rate, and other options. Press the Begin button to start recording.

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 3

The default longest record time is 25 sec (if the option is 8 bits per sample and Mono). If more time is needed, select the Memory.. command in the Op-

Memory Setting Dia	log	×
Memory Size:	٥	м
	<u>O</u> K	

tion menu . The Memory Setting Dialog box is shown as follows. Press the End button to stop recording.



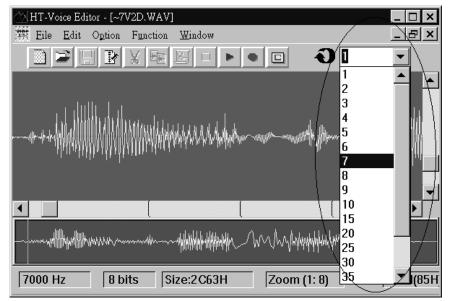
### Play command sample rate

#### → Step 1

Before playing, it is necessary to record or open a file. Select the Play command in the Function menu, or press the 🕨 button to listen to the recorded sound. Press the 🔳 button to stop.

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 2

To play a song repeatedly, select the number of times to play from the following combo box.

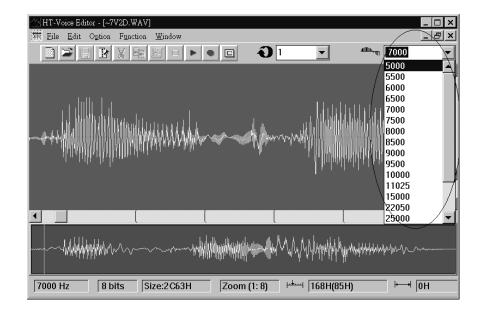


# → Step 3

The Sample Rate can be adjusted to differentiate between the sounds produced.

You can also adjust the Sampling Rate, and then you can differentiate between the sounds produced. This command will not change the voice data, but the sampling rate when playing. Different sampling rate will come with difference sound in frequency and speed.





# **Open command**

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 1

To open a voice file, select the Open command in the File menu.

## $\rightarrow$ Step 2 - Cut/Copy/Paste

Select a range first, and then cut/copy the range by selecting the cut/copy command from the Edit menu, or press the 🗶 / 🖭 button. After cutting or copying, the Paste command in Edit menu or the 🖳 button will be enabled. This command can be selected or button pressed to paste the range in the clipboard to the current position.

## → Step 3 - Delete

Mark a range first, and then select the Delete command in the Edit menu.

#### → Step 4 - Re-sample

Sample rate of the file can be changed by selecting the [ReSample] command in the [Edit] menu. The [ReSample Dialog] is shown below:

ReSample Dialog 🗙 🗙
SampleRate 8000
<u>O</u> K

1	6	7
		•



ReSample will add/delete data points to suit the sampling rate we type in. If you decrease the sampling rate, the timbre will not as good as original voice, but the file size will be decreased.

#### $\rightarrow$ Step 5 - Change Format

The voice file format can be changed by selecting the [ChangeFormat] comman in [Edit] menu, or pressing the 💷 button. You can change the Sampling rate, Channel, and Sampling rate, Channel, and Bits per sample of this file. If a PCM file is opened, the following default parameters are taken: Sampling rate 8000Hz, 1 default setting, Sampling rate 8000Hz, 1 Channel, 8 Bits Per Sample. So we can set the correct setting by using [ChangeFormat] command.

### $\rightarrow$ Step 6 - Change Code

Before changing the code, a range must first be marked, or defined in the Change Code Dialog box as shown below. The Code can be changed by selecting the Change Code command in the Edit menu.

To replace the data marked with the code series, fill in the Changed Code edit box with code series, with the format data1,data2,data3 (hex). The data marked with the code function can also be replaced. Also, select which channel to be replaced by checking the Changed Channel check box.

Change Code Dialog		×
Defined Range: From	to	0
Changed Code :		
Code Replaced Function		
C f(x)=max-ax,a is a positive		
⊙ f(x)=ax-max,a is a positive		
C f(x)=f(x−1)-a/x,f(0)=0		
⊂ f(x)=f(x-1)+ax, f(0)=-max		
C f(x)=f(x-1)-ax, f(0)=0		
C f(x)=f(x-1)+a/x,f(0)=-max		
Channel 1 Changed Channel: Channel 2	<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel





#### $\rightarrow$ Step 7 - Amplify

Mark a range first or choose the Amplify command from the Edit menu and define the range in the Amplify Dialog window, and then type in the magnitude desired for the selected range to be amplified.

Amplify Dialog		×
Defined Range:From	0 to	0
Amplify: 1		<u>0</u> K

#### → Step 8 - Offset

Mark a range first, or select the [Offset] command from the [Edit] menu and define a range in the [Offset Dialog] window, and type in the desired offset value. If the offset value is negtive, voice data will down offset, that means, if the offset value is positive, voice data will up offset.

Offset Dialog		×
Defined Range:From	0 to	0
Offset: 1		<u>O</u> K

## Save command Voice type

#### $\rightarrow$ Save

To save a file, select the Save command in the File menu, or press the **L** button. If the file name is not specified, the system will show a Save As dialogue box.

 $\rightarrow$  Save As...

To save the current file under another name, select the Save As command from the File menu. The System will show a Save As dialogue box as follows.





Save As		? ×
File name: Untitled	Folders: c:\ht-ide\bin a c:\ ht-ide a bin	OK Cancel Network
Save file as type:	Drives:	
Wave Files (*.WAV) 💌	😑 c: crystal	<b>T</b>
Wave Files (*.WAV) HOLTEK PCM Files (*.PCM)		

Type in the full path, file name, and file type: Wave Files .WAV or PCM File .PCM.

#### Other commands

- → Short Menu or Full Menu/File Short menu / Full menu switch command.
- $\rightarrow$  Exit/File

Close the application.

→ About HT-Voice.../File

Information about this application.

- $\rightarrow$  Tile or Arrange/Window Tile (it is called Arrange in short menu) all opened files on the screen.
- $\rightarrow$  Cascade/Window

Cascade all opened files on the screen.

# $\rightarrow$ Arrange lcons/Window

Arrange all icons on the screen.

 $\rightarrow$  Close All/Window

Close all opened files.

# **Using the HT-Binary Editor**

The main screen of the HT-Binary Editor is shown below. This is a simple binary editor used to communicate with the HT-VDS827. This chapter explains how to edit a binary file and describes the menu commands.



HT-B	inary Edit	<b>Edito</b> Win		0:\D6	510\C	тоо	LS\H	IDE\	BIN\	IASI	А.ЕХ	E]	WINAM	P ===		03:5;	23 K⊯		_	- × - E	_
				Ø	1	>[	MOVE C	]													
	0	1	2	З	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	в	С	D	Е	F					
00000	<b>4</b> d	5a	82	00	91	00	58	04	40	01	86	04	ff	ff	46	15	MZ	Σ	(1@1	ÿÿFI	
00010	80	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	Зe	00	00	00	01	00	f b	50	-111	ш			
00020	6 a	72	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	jr	ш			
00030	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	01	00	ш	ш			
00040	00	00	5e	00	00	00	а3	00	00	00	4 f	01	00	00	f b	03	11^	ш	- 110		
00050	6 e	02	b7	03	бe	02	8 e	03	6e	02	77	03	6е	02	d a	02	n I	n	nlv	∉ln I	
00060	6 e	02	c1	02	6e	02	a 8	02	6e	02	8 f	02	6 e	02	76	02	n I	n I	n	nlvl	
00070	6 e	02	5d	02	6е	02	44	02	6e	02	2b	02	6 e	02	00	02	nl]	InII	) n -	+InIII	
00080	6e	02	d f	01	6e	02	d 0	01	6e	02	bf	01	6 e	02	9e	01	n I	nl	n	nl	
00090	6e	02	86	01	6e	02	77	01	6e	02	60	01	6 e	02	4 f	01	n I	nlv	∉ln l`	nlol	
000A0	6e	02	Зе	01	6e	02	2е	01	6e	02	1e	01	6 e	02	0e	01	n   >	In I.	In	InII	
000B0	6e	02	fe	00	6e	02	66	00	6e	02	dd	00	6e	02	31	00	n I	n	n	n 🛙 1	
000C0	6e	02	15	00	6e	02	f 1	07	6e	02	с8	07	6е	02	97	07	n	n	n I	nl	
000D0	6e	02	68	07	6e	02	Зf	07	6e	02	26	07	6е	02	θf	06	nlh	In 17	PIn I 8	- n	
000E0	6e	02	сa	06	6e	02	71	06	6e	02	49	06	6e	02	83	05	n I	nlq	[ln]]	IInI	
000F0	6e	02	57	05	6e	02	44	05	6e	02	f b	04	6e	02	d 2	04	n∎₩	nII	n	n	
																		٨	NUM		

#### Creating a new file

To create a new file, select the New command from the File menu, or press the D button. Then begin to input data (Hex) in the editing area.

#### **Opening a file**

To open a file, select the Open command from the File menu, or press the button. The following Open File dialogue box appears:

Type in the full path, or press the Browse button to select a file, and input the starting address from where the file is loaded in the Start Address edit box.

Open File		×
		<u>O</u> k
File Name:	*.DAT	Browse
Start Address:	0 H	<u>C</u> ancel

#### Editing

#### $\rightarrow$ Go To

To go to a specific position, select the Go To command from the Edit menu, or press the 🛃 button. A Go To dialogue box appears:

Type in the position you want to go to (in Hex), and press the OK button.



Go To	×
Go To:	<u>O</u> k
0 -	<u>C</u> ancel

#### $\rightarrow$ Fill

To fill a range with data (in Hex), select the Fill command in the Edit menu, or press the  $\bigcirc$  button. A Fill dialogue box appears:

Type in the Start Address, End Address and data in Hex, and then press the Ok button.

411	×
Start Address(H):	0
End Address(H):	0
Data Value(H):	
	<u>C</u> ancel <u>O</u> k

#### $\rightarrow$ Move

To copy data from a specified range to a target address, select the Move command in the Edit menu, or press the 🔳 button. A Move dialogue box appears:

Move	×
Start Address(H):	
End Address(H):	0
Target Address(H):	0
	<u>C</u> ancel <u>O</u> k

Type in the Start Address, End Address and Target Address, and then press the Ok button.



#### Saving

#### $\rightarrow$ Save

To save a file, select the Save command from the File menu, or press the **b**utton. A Save File dialogue box appears. If the file name is not specified, a Save As.. dialogue box will appear.

Save File			×
Start Address:	0	н	<u>O</u> k
End Address:	23F	н	<u>C</u> ancel
	-		

Type in the Start Address and End Address to be saved and then press the Ok button.

#### $\rightarrow$ Save As ...

To save the current file under another name, select the Save As command in the File menu. A Save As ... dialogue box appears:

Save As		×
File Name:	*.DAT	Browse
Start Address:	0H	<u>0</u> k
End Address:	23F H	<u>C</u> ancel

Type in the full path in the File Name edit box, or press the Browse button to select a file. Input the Start Address and End Address to be saved, and then press the Ok button.





#### Other commands

- → Short Menu or Full Menu/File Short menu / Full menu switch command.
- $\rightarrow$  Exit/File

Close the system.

 $\rightarrow$  About HT-Binary Editor\*/File Show information about the system.

#### $\rightarrow$ Tile or Arrange/Window

Tile (called Arrange in short menu) all opened files on the screen.

- → Cascade/Window Cascade all opened files on the screen.
- $\rightarrow \ \ \, \text{Arrange lcons/Window} \\ \text{Arrange all icons on the screen.}$

#### $\rightarrow$ Close All/Window

Close all opened files on the screen.



Chapter 14

# LCD Simulator



# Introduction

The LCD simulator HT-LCDS provides a mechanism to simulate the output of the LCD driver. According to the designed patterns and the control programs, the HT-LCDS displays the patterns on the screen in real time. It facilitates the development process even if the required LCD panel is unavailable. Note that if the micro controller of the current project does not support LCD functions, these commands are disabled.

# LCD Panel File

Before starting the LCD simulation, an LCD panel file must first be set up, otherwise the HT-LCDS cannot simulate the LCD action. If the micro controller of the current project has an LCD driver, then a corresponding panel file should be setup for simulation. The LCD simulator commands within the Tools menu will then be enabled to setup the panel file and for simulation. (Fig 14-1).

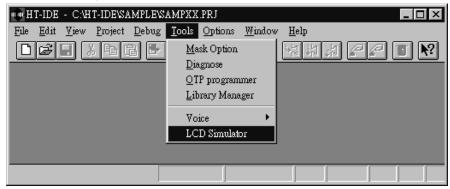


Fig 14-1

#### Relationship between the panel file and the current project

By default, the panel file has the same file name as the current project name except for the extension name, which is .lcd. The HT-LCDS assumes this file to be the corresponding panel file of the current project. The panel file is generated by the HT-LCDS File menu, New command or the New button on the toolbar. A different file name from the current project name can be assigned to the panel file by clicking File menu, Save command or Save button on the toolbar.

When the HT-LCDS begins simulation, it refers to the current active panel file for the simulation information. The File menu, New command or Open command is used to activate a panel file whether for the same project name or not.

If the HT-LCDS was in simulation mode while exiting the previous time from the HT-IDE2000, the HT-LCDS will be automatically invoked in simulation mode the next time the HT-IDE2000 is used. In this situation, the HT-LCDS refers to the panel file with the same name as the project name.

#### **Entry situations of the HT-LCDS**

When selected from within the Tools menu, the LCD Simulator, Fig 14-2 is displayed if the corresponding panel file of the current project exists. The file name of each bitmap pattern is shown at the specified COM/SEG position of the table. At the same time, these patterns are shown on the above panel screen. If the corresponding panel file does not exist in the project directory, both the panel screen and the COM/SEG table are not displayed.

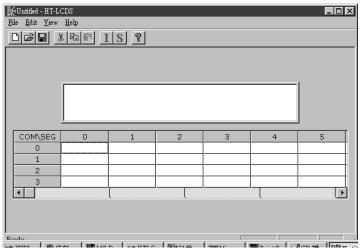


Fig 14-2

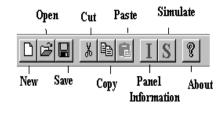


Fig 14-3

# Set up the LCD Panel File

The following two steps are used to setup a panel file:

- Set the panel configurations. This data includes the segment and common number of the LCD driver as well as the width and height size of the panel in pixels. This is displayed on the screen as well as the directory of the panel file and the dot matrix mode selection.
- Select the patterns and their positions. This will setup the relationship between the patterns and the COM/SEG positions.

#### Set the panel configurations

The only way to set the panel configuration is to create a new panel file by selecting the File menu, New command. The Panel Configuration dialog box, in Fig 14-4, will be displayed along with the corresponding panel file name. Set the correct data for each item in the box and press the [OK] button. The screen returns to Fig 14-2 for pattern selection.

Panel Configuration					×
COM	4 🔅	SEG	18 🗧	uC  HT49C×I	) 🗸
HOLTER Width	400 ÷	Height	80 *		
Directory of p	anel file:				
C:\HT-IDE\SA	MPLE			Browse	:
🗖 Dot Matrix	Mode	OK		Cancel	

Fig 14-4

The panel configuration items are:

- $\bullet\,\mu C$  controller. Selects the micro controller of the current project.
- COM and SEG. Select the number of the COMMON and SEGMENT of the LCD driver respectively. The default number of the LCD driver for this micro controller is displayed. Ensure that these numbers are the same as the actual setting number of the LCD driver for the micro controller.
- Width and Height. Enter the size of panel screen in pixels. They can be changed in order to adjust the panel screen.
- Directory of panel file. Select the directory where the panel file is stored. Use the the browse button to change the directory or set the same directory as the project s.
- Dot Matrix Mode. To simulate the dot matrix type of LCD panel or not. The dot matrix screen is similar to Fig 14-5.

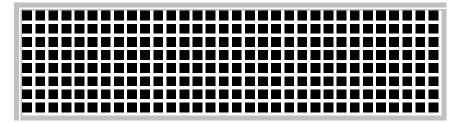


Fig 14-5

**Note** Do not set different COM or SEG number from the actual corresponding numbers which are set for the microcontroller LCD, otherwise the results will be unpredictable.

#### Select the patterns and their positions

- When Fig 14-2 appears during the panel file creation procedure, i.e. after completing the panel configuration, patterns must be selected by using the Pattern Information dialog box and selecting the COM/SEG positions for these patterns.
- If Fig 14-2 has appeared from the Open command of the File menu, then new patterns may be added, original patterns changed to new patterns or patterns deleted from the COM/SEG table. In addition, the COM/SEG positions of the patterns can be changed.

The following are the methods used to add/delete/modify the patterns and their positions:

#### Add a new pattern

- Select the COM/SEG position on the grid as in Fig 14-2 and double click the mouse. The Pattern Information dialog box, in Fig 14-6, is displayed. All the bitmap files in the project s directory are listed in the Pattern List box. The Size field is the bitmap size of selected pattern, Com and Seg fields are the numbers of the selected COM/SEG position of this pattern. None of these three fields can be modified.
- Select a pattern, i.e. a bitmap file, from the pattern list box, or click the Browse button to change to another directory and select a pattern from it. The HT-LCDS uses 2-color bitmap files as the image source of patterns. The Preview-window zooms in the selected pattern.
- Set the X/Y positions of the selected pattern in the panel screen.
- Press the [OK] button which returns the screen to Fig 14-2, then click the Save command of the File menu or click the Save button on the toolbar. The panel file has now been created or modified.

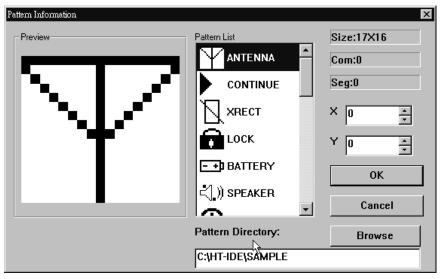


Fig 14-6

#### Delete a pattern

• In Fig 14-2, Select the COM/SEG position of the pattern to be deleted and press the the [Delete] key or click the Cut button on the toolbar.





#### Change the pattern

- Use the Delete a pattern method to delete the selected pattern, then use the Add a new pattern method to change the pattern. Or ..
- In Fig 14-2, select the COM/SEG position of the selected pattern and double click the mouse. The Pattern Information dialog box, in Fig 14-6, is then displayed. Select a pattern from the Pattern List box and press the [OK] button.

#### Change the pattern position

- In Fig 14-2, use the Select-Drag-Drop method to move the pattern directly onto the panel screen. Or ...
- In Fig 14-2, double click the COM/SEG position of the selected pattern. The Pattern Information dialog box, in Fig 14-6, is displayed. Set the X, Y value of the new position and press the [OK] button.

When above operations have been completed and the screen returns to Fig 14-2, click the Save command of the File menu or click the Save button on the toolbar. The panel file has now been created or modified.

## Simulate the LCD

Before starting the LCD simulation, ensure that the correct panel file is referred to by the HT-LCDS. It is dependent upon the following two situations:

#### Still in LCD simulation mode when exiting from HT-IDE2000

If the HT-LCDS was in simulation mode the last time the HT-IDE2000 was exited, it will return to this mode the next time HT-IDE2000 is run. The HT-LCDS will reference the panel file with the same name as the project name. The LCD simulation can be terminated when starting the HT-IDE2000.

#### In HT-LCDS environment

Click the LCD Simulator command of the Tools menu, in Fig 14-1, to enter the HT-LCDS environment. Fig 14-2 is displayed.

- Click the S button on the toolbar. The HT-LCDS begins LCD simulation and the corresponding panel file is referenced. This will be the panel file with the same name as the project s.
- Open a panel file which may not be the corresponding panel file of the current project. Click the S button on the toolbar. The HT-LCDS will begin LCD simulation and the corresponding panel file referenced.



When the HT-LCDS begins simulation, Fig 14-7 is displayed and the most recent LCD datum displayed on the panel screen.

## Stop the simulating

Click the X box on Fig 14-7, to stop the HT-LCDS simulation and exit.

🖪 Holts	ek LCD Sim	nulator				-	<u> </u>
0	U	二))	- +Þ	Ô	Ø	Ψ	Ň
19	IJIJ		IJ.	岛岛	ΞĒ	9 🗉	ΞI
					120.12		121

Fig 14-7



Chapter 15

# **Virtual Peripheral Manager**

15

# Introduction

In most practical applications the chosen microcontroller is connected to some form of external hardware to implement the necessary user functions, however the inclusion of this external hardware in the simulation process is usually outside the scope of most microcontroller simulators. To overcome this problem, Holtek has developed a Virtual Peripheral Manager, or VPM, which enables the user to add a range of external peripheral devices to the microcontroller project. Used in conjunction with the HT-IDE simulator, the VPM enables the user to directly drive and monitor the inputs and outputs of these external hardware devices allowing for a more efficient debug and implementation of user applications.

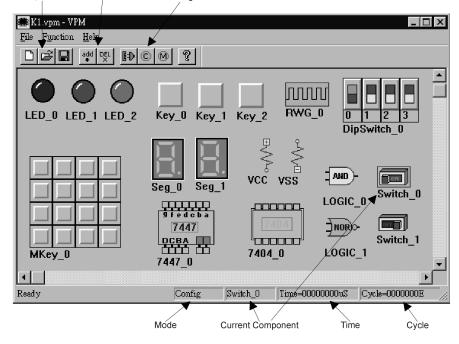
## The VPM Window

Fig 15-1 shows a practical example of a VPM window. As in most window applications the VPM window incorporates a toolbar for the function menus and a status bar to indicate program information with the main screen area displaying the peripherals or devices which have been added to the project.

The peripherals added to the project are known as components in the VPM. Components can be selected by clicking the mouse left button on the component required. Within this document the selected component will be referred to as the current component. By double clicking on the current component a connect dialog box will be displayed which permits the necessary connections to be made between the component and the microcontroller. By clicking the right mouse key, on certain current components a configuration dialog box will be displayed allowing attributes to be setup for that particular component.



In the status bar there are four fields, Mode, current component, time and cycle. The mode field indicates whether the VPM is currently in configuration mode or running mode. The current component field shows the name of the current component. The Time field and cycle field shows the total execution time and cycle count respectively while the VPM is in running mode



New/Open/Save Add/DEL Connect/configuration/Mode

Fig 15-1



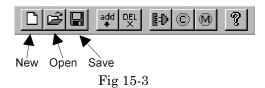
# **VPM Menu**

#### File menu

There are five functions in the file menu as shown in Fig 15-2. Three of the main functions can also be found on the toolbar as shown in Fig 15-3

<u>N</u> ew Open Save Save <u>A</u> s	Ctrl+N Ctrl+O Ctrl+S
Recent File	
E <u>x</u> it	

Fig 15-2



#### $\rightarrow$ New

Create a new VPM project. Each time the VPM is entered the system automatically creates a new project.

#### $\rightarrow$ Open

Open an existing VPM project.

 $\rightarrow$  Save

Save current project to file.

 $\rightarrow$  Save As

Save current project with another file name to file.

 $\rightarrow$  Exit

Exit VPM and return to Windows.





#### Function menu

There are five functions in the function menu as shown in Fig 15-4. All of these functions can also be found on the toolbar as shown in Fig 15-5



Fig 15-4

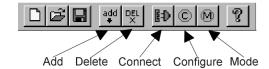


Fig 15-5

#### $\rightarrow$ Add

Add a new peripheral to the project.

Click the Add button on the toolbar. An add peripheral dialog will be displayed as shown in Fig 15-6. Select the peripheral desired and click the OK button.

. 55	
LED	OK
BUTTON	
SWITCH	Cancel
MatrixKey	
RESISTOR	
LOGIC	
7-Segment	
7447	
7404	
7408	

Fig 15-6



#### $\rightarrow$ Delete

Delete a peripheral from the project. Select the component to be deleted and click the del button. The selected component will be removed from the project

#### $\rightarrow$ Connect

Select a component and click the Connect button on the toolbar. A Connect Dialog will be displayed like Fig. 15-7. The connection status of the current component will be displayed in connect status list box. The connect/disconnect button can be used again to adjust the connection status between components.

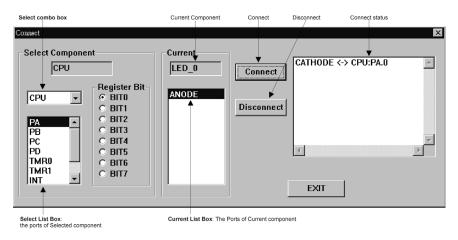


Fig 15-7

As an example, Fig. 15-7 shows the Connect dialog box for an LED component named LED\_0. In this example, the current component is LED\_0. The Select combo box will display all the components in this project that can be connected to LED\_0. The Select List Box will display all the ports of the selected component. The Register Bit shows the port information details. The peripheral of an LED has two pins, one anode and one cathode. In this example, LED\_0's CATHODE pin has been connected to the CPU Port A bit0.

#### $\rightarrow$ Configure

Some peripherals include some user adjustable attribute options. To do this the component should first be selected and then the Configure button pressed. If the component has attribute options the Configuration Dialog box will be displayed. Fig. 15-8 shows an example of an LED configuration dialog box.



CONFIG
Color
• RED
Name LED_0
OK Cancel

Fig 15-8

#### $\rightarrow$ Mode

The VPM has two modes, configuration mode and running mode. By clicking on the mode button, or selecting mode item from the function menu, the system will toggle the VPM between these two modes. In the configuration mode, the virtual external circuit can be edited using the add/delete/configure functions. In the running mode, the VPM will display the operations of these components according to their specific configurations in addition to displaying the HT-IDE2000 microcontroller simulation results.

# **The VPM Peripherals**

LED



Fig 15-9

The LED has two pins, one cathode and one anode. When the cathode =0 and the anode =1, the LED will be illuminated. The LED has a colour option as shown in the configuration dialog box.





**Button/switch** 



Fig 15-10

The BUTTON/SWITCH has two options, the debounce time and the switch status when in the open position. The debounce time units are in milliseconds. The BUTTON has a non-latching momentary operation while the SWITCH has a latching non-momentary operation. The DipSwitch peripheral offers a means of providing multiple switches in a single package, the size of which is adjustable.

Button Config Dialog	X
Туре	
🔿 'O' when open	
⊙ 1' when open	
	tton Name <ey_0< td=""></ey_0<>
EXIT	

Fig 15-11

Seven segment display



Fig 15-12

A seven segment display is formed from eight individual leds known as A, B, C, D, E, F, G and ptr. Each of these individual leds are connected to an input pin of the same name and also to a common pin. This common pin can be either a cathode (-) or anode (+) connection which determines the polarity of the display.

→ Resistor





The resistors exist to provide a pull-up or pull-down function and are connected to either VCC or VSS respectively. The required configuration is set using their respective configuration dialog box.

• Logic gate

Logic gates are provided to give a total of six logic functions.

Co	mfiguration		X
	Function		
	• AND AND-		O XOR
	O NAND NAND	O NOR INDRO-	O NOT -NOTOO
	Pin Number 2	ОК	

Fig 15-14

Select a logic gate using the add function. If the logic gate that is displayed is not the required one, pressing the right key on the mouse will display a range of logic gates as shown in the figure. The desired logic gate can then be selected. The Pin Number input area determines the number of input pins to each gate. The value set here is reflected in the number of pins available in the connect dialog box.

#### • Matrix key

The Matrix key provides a standard matrix key peripheral device, the size of which can be setup from the configuration dialog box. The debounce time can be set for the matrix switches with the units in milliseconds. Note that the columns of the matrix are either connected to VCC or VSS, an option which is set in the attribute dialog box of the matrix peripheral.

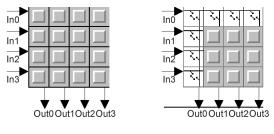


Fig 15-15

If, for example, the user sets up the matrix key with row = 4 and column =4, there will be 4 input pins or rows and 4 output pins or columns.

#### → Rectangle wave generator

#### JUUU

#### Fig 15-16

The rectangle wave generator is used to generate rectangular waves, the frequency of which is dependent upon the CPU frequency. In the attribute dialog box of this peripheral the cycle input dictates how many instruction cycles are required for an input waveform transition. If for example the cycle value is set to 2, then every 2 machine cycles the rectangular waveform generator input will toggle. The period of this input is therefore twice the cycle value. Note that if the rectangular wave generator is selected and the left key clicked twice to display the connect dialog box, the generator can only connect to one device. However if the devices to be connected to are selected and their connect dialog box displayed then more than one device can be connected to the same wave generator. If more than one pin on the microcontroller is to be connected to the same wave generator then it is necessary to add further wave generators to achieve this.



# **Quick Start Example**

From the examples provided in the HT-IDE2000 User's Guide, one has been chosen as a practical example to illustrate how to construct a virtual external circuit.

#### Scanning light

#### → From within the HT-IDE2000 system

- Create a new project and select the HT48C10 body (Project/New)
- Add the source file scanning.asm to the project (Project/Edit) The file can be found in the HT-IDE2000\SAMPLE\CHAP15 directory
- Change the HT-IDE2000 to simulation mode.(Options/Debug/Mode)
- Build the project.(Project/Build)

#### $\rightarrow$ From within the VPM

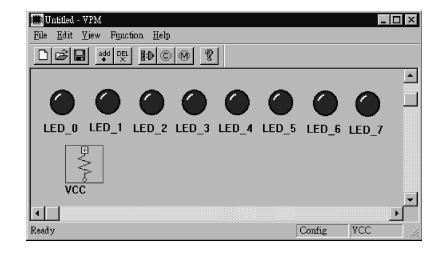
- Create a new VPM project.
- Add 8 LEDs to the project by repeatedly clicking the Add button and selecting LED 8 times
- Add a resistor to the project click the Add button and select Resistor Select the Resistor just added and double click the mouse left button then setup the resistor's name with VCC
- $\bullet$  Connect all of the LED anode pins to VCC and connect all of the LED s cathode pins to bit n of PA on the CPU (n=0-7)
- $\bullet$  The following shows how to connect LED\_0's anode to VCC and its cathode to bit0 of PA on the CPU
- Click the mouse left button on LED\_0 to select it
- $\bullet$  Click the mouse right button on LED\_0 to display the connect dialog box as shown as Fig. 15-18
- Connect the cathode of LED\_0 to PA bit0 on the CPU
- Repeat the above to setup all other LED\_n connections
- Push the mode button to change the VPM mode from configuration mode to running mode

#### $\rightarrow$ From within the HT-IDE2000

Start the debug operations — the output results for the LEDs will be shown in the VPM window.









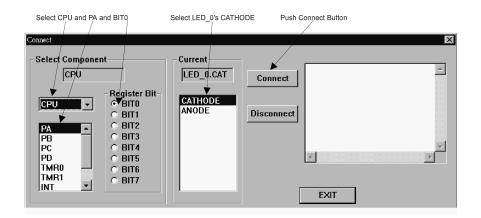


Fig 15-18



**Part IV** 

# Programs and Application Circuits

To assist in understanding the general concepts of microcontroller circuit and program design some examples are provided here for consultation. Working carefully through the examples, simultaneously looking at both the code and the explanation should give a good introduction to some useful microcontroller programming techniques. Although specific microcontrollers are chosen for the application in question, the same general programming techniques apply to other controllers.



Chapter 16

# **Input/Output Applications**



Using the HT48CX0 series of microcontrollers for I/O applications is very simple using the port I/O registers to control the input/output data. The possibility of single bit manipulation further enhances control of input and output data giving increased flexibility. Setting the port bits to either input or output is conducted under program control and normally implemented within the program initialization section. Setting the port bits can be changed again within the main program section, however this is not recommended unless the circuit design calls for special double function I/O port operation.

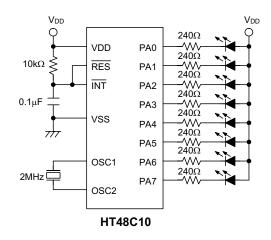
# **Scanning Light**

This example gives a functional emulation of a scanning LED array. Here a row of LEDs will light in turn one after the other. The circuit uses the PA port PA0~PA7, each bit of which is connected via a  $240\Omega$  series resistor to an LED.

#### **Circuit design**

The I/O port bits PA0~PA7 are the outputs, with each output bit controlling a single LED via a 240 $\Omega$  series resistor. By using the instructions RRC and RLC the illuminated LED can be made to move from left to right and vice versa. See the circuit diagram for more details.





# Program

#include ł	nt48c10.in	С	
data .sect count1 db count2 db lamp db	? ?		<pre>;== data section == ;delay loop counter 1 ;delay loop counter 2 ;lamp register</pre>
; code .sect org jmp org reti org reti start: clr clr clr set set	ion at 0 00H start 04h 08h 0ch intc tmrc tmr pac pbc	code	<pre>; == program section == ; ; ; ;external interrupt subroutine ;for guarantee ;timer/event 0 interrupt subroutine ;for guarantee ;timer/event 1 interrupt subroutine ;for guarantee ; ;initialize registers ;to guarantee performance ;(interrupts) ;(ports) ;(input mode)</pre>
set main: mov mov mov mov llamp: mov mov	pcc a,0 pac,a pa,a a,0feh lamp,a a,lamp pa,a	;(1) ;(2)	; ; set port A to output port ;zero port A (all lamp on) ;1111 1110 (1:OFF,0:ON) ;set initial lamp state ;shift lamp left loop ;load lamp state ;output lamp state to port A



#### Chapter 16 Input/Output Applications

	call	delay	;(3)	;delay for a while
	set	С		;;shift lamp state left through
	rlc	lamp	; (4)	;;carry flag (fill LSB 1)
	SZ	С		; if all LEDs have been lit?
	jmp	llamp	;(5)	;;no. continue shift left loop
	rrc	lamp	;(6)	;;yes. restore lamp state
rlar	np:			;shift lamp right loop
	mov	a,lamp		;load lamp state
	mov	pa,a		;output lamp state to port A
	call	delay		;delay for a while
	set	С		;;shift lamp state right through
	rrc	lamp	;(7)	;;carry flag (fill MSB 1)
	SZ	С		;if all LEDs have been lit?
	jmp	rlamp		;;no. continue shift right loop
	rlc	lamp		;;yes. restore lamp state
	jmp	llamp	;(8)	;repeat from shift lamp left loop
dela	ay pro	C		;delay subroutine
	mov	a,2fh		;; set counters
	mov	count1,a		;;
	mov	count2,a		;;
d1:				
	sdz	count2		;count down count2
	J 1	d1		;
	sdz	count1		;count down count1
	jmp	d1		;
	ret			
dela	ay endp			
	end			

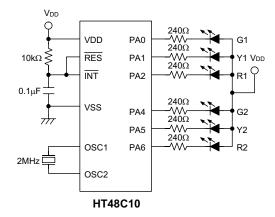
#### **Program description**

This short program allows an array of 8 LEDs to be illuminated in turn first in a left moving direction and then in a contrary right moving direction. The program begins by first setting up the ports as either output or input as shown in section (1). Here, as all ports are to be set as outputs, the control register for PA, known as PAC should only contain zeros. In section (2) bit 0 of Port A is set low which illuminates the first LED. Section (3) is a time delay to allow the LED illumination to be visible. In section (4) the RLC or rotate left instruction is used to move the illuminated LED one step to the left using the lamp register and the accumulator. At section (5) the lamp register is tested for all zeros. If this is the case, all the LEDs have been illuminated and the program jumps to the next section illuminating the LEDs in turn, one step to the right. This time the RRC or rotate right command is used as shown in section (6). A process similar to the above is repeated as shown in section (7). Finally the lamp register is checked for all zeros, which is an indication that all the LEDs have been illuminated. If so the program repeats the cycle jumping back to the beginning as shown in section (8) and starting the pattern with the left moving LEDs.



# **Traffic Light**

This application uses red, green and yellow LEDs to simulate a crossroads traffic light function. Initially R1 and G2 are illuminated. After a delay the green light flashes followed by the yellow light. After another delay R2 and G1 are illuminated. This cycle will continue in this way indefinitely in the same way as the traffic lights at a traffic crossroad intersection. Within the application the different time durations for the red and green light as well as the flashing time can be programmed.



#### **Circuit design**

The circuit uses the two port sections PA0~PA2 and PA4~PA6 with each one representing a set of traffic lights on each road at a crossroad intersection. The operation of the circuit will be self explanatory from the contents of the program. See the circuit diagram for more details of the hardware.

#### Program

```
#include ht48c10.inc
; ------
                     ;== data section ==
data .section data
count1 db ?
                       ;delay loop counter 1
count2 db ?
                      ;delay loop counter 2
;delay loop counter 3
count3 db ?
flash db ?
                       ;light flash register
rglight db ?
                       ;light register
; ------
                                         _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
code .section at 0 code ;== program section ==
   org
         00H
                       ;
   jmp
         start
   org
         04h
                       ; external interrupt subroutine
   reti
                       ; for safeguard
```

org			
	08h		;timer/event 0 interrupt subroutine
reti			;for safeguard
org	0ch		;timer/event 1 interrupt subroutine
reti			;for safeguard
start:			;
clr	intc		;initialize registers
clr	tmrc		;to guarantee performance
clr	tmr		; (interrupts)
set	pac		; (ports)
set	pbc		; (input mode)
set	pcc		;
main:	poo		,
mov	a,0	;(1)	;
mov		, (±)	, ;set port A to output port
	pac,a		
mov	pa,a		;zero port A (all light on) ;light loop
loop:	- 0		
mov	a,0		;;load table-read pointer
mov	tblp,a	(2)	;;
	rglight		;load light state by looking up table
mov	a,rglight	;(3)	;;output light state to port A
mov	pa,a		;;
call	delayl	;(4)	;delay for a 'long' while
inc	tblp	;(5)	;
mov	a,7		;load flash counter
mov	flash,a		;
flash1:			;flash1 loop
tabrdl	rglight		;load light state
			, road right board
mov	a,rglight		;;
mov mov			
	a,rglight	;(6)	;;
mov	a,rglight pa,a	;(6)	;; ;;output light state to port A
mov call	a,rglight pa,a delays	;(6)	<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ;</pre>
mov call inc	a,rglight pa,a delays tblp	;(6)	;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while
mov call inc sdz jmp	a,rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1	;(6)	<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp	a,rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 .rglight	;(6)	<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl	<pre>a,rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a,rglight</pre>	;(6)	<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov mov	a, rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a,rglight pa,a		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;;</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov mov call	<pre>a,rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a,rglight pa,a delaym</pre>		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov mov	a, rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a,rglight pa,a		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ;</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov mov call inc ;	a, rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a, rglight pa,a delaym tblp		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ;</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov mov call inc ; tabrdl	<pre>a,rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a,rglight pa,a delaym tblprglight</pre>		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ; ; ;load light state</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov call inc ; tabrdl mov	<pre>a,rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a,rglight pa,a delaym tblprglight a,rglight a,rglight</pre>		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ; ; ;load light state ;;output light state to port A</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov call inc ; tabrdl mov mov	<pre>a, rglight pa, a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a, rglight pa, a delaym tblp . rglight a, rglight a, rglight pa, a</pre>		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ; ;load light state ;;output light state to port A ;;</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov call inc ; tabrdl mov mov call	a, rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a, rglight pa,a delaym tblp 		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ; ; ;load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'long' while</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov call inc ; tabrdl mov mov	<pre>a, rglight pa, a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a, rglight pa, a delaym tblp . rglight a, rglight a, rglight pa, a</pre>		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ; ;load light state ;;output light state to port A ;;</pre>
<pre>mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov call inc ; tabrdl mov mov call inc ; call inc</pre>	a, rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 .rglight a, rglight pa,a delaym tblp .rglight a, rglight a, rglight pa,a delayl		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ; ; ;load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'long' while ;</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov call inc ; tabrdl mov mov call inc mov call inc	<pre>a, rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a, rglight pa,a delaym tblp rglight a, rglight pa,a delayl tblp a,7</pre>		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ; ; ;load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'long' while ; ;;load flash counter</pre>
mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov call inc ; tabrdl mov mov call inc ; tabrdl mov mov call inc	a, rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 .rglight a, rglight pa,a delaym tblp .rglight a, rglight a, rglight pa,a delayl		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ; ; ;load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'long' while ; ;;load flash counter ;;</pre>
<pre>mov call inc sdz jmp tabrdl mov call inc ; tabrdl mov mov call inc mov call inc</pre>	<pre>a, rglight pa,a delays tblp flash flash1 rglight a, rglight pa,a delaym tblp rglight a, rglight pa,a delayl tblp a,7</pre>		<pre>;; ;;output light state to port A ;delay for a 'little' while ; ;if flash light over? ;no. flash again ;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'medium' while ; ; ;load light state ;;output light state to port A ;; ;delay for a 'long' while ; ;;load flash counter</pre>

	mo17	a raliaht	;;output light state to port A
	mov	a,rglight	
	mov	pa,a delays	;
	call inc	tblp	;delay for a 'little' while
	sdz	flash	, if flach light over?
		flash2	;if flash light over? ;no. flash again
	jmp tabrdl		-
		rglight	;(yes. go ahead) load light state ;;output light state to port A
	mov mov	a,rglight pa,a	
	call	delaym	;; ;delay for a 'medium' while
	jmp	loop	;repeat from light loop
dol		-	;'long' delay subroutine
uer	ayl pro mov	a,Ofh	;;load counters
	mov	count1,a count2,a	;;
	mov	count3,a	;;
d1:	mov	counts, a	;;
u1 :	sdz	count3	;;count down count3
		d1	,,count down counts
	jmp sdz		· · count down count?
	jmp	count2 d1	;;count down count2
	2 1		. count down count1
	sdz	count1 d1	;;count down count1
	jmp	aı	
del	ret	~	
	ayl end	-	
d 0 1	at m n n o	~	· Imodium! dolar cubrouting
del	aym pro		;'medium' delay subroutine
del	mov	a,07h	;;load counters
del	mov mov	a,07h count1,a	;;load counters ;;
del	mov mov mov	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh	;;load counters ;; ;;
del	mov mov mov mov	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a	;;load counters ;; ;; ;;
	mov mov mov	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh	;;load counters ;; ;;
del d2:	mov mov mov mov mov	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a	;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;;
	mov mov mov mov mov	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a	;;load counters ;; ;; ;;
	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3</pre>
	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2	;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;;
	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2</pre>
	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count2 d2 count1	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3</pre>
	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2</pre>
d2:	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2</pre>
d2: del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;;count down count3 ;;count down count2 ;;count down count1</pre>
d2: del del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end ays pro	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2 ;; count down count1 ;'little' delay subroutine</pre>
d2: del del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end ays pro mov	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2 p c a,0ffh	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2 ;; count down count1 ;'little' delay subroutine ;;load counters</pre>
d2: del del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end ays pro mov mov	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2 p c a,0ffh count1,a	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2 ;; count down count1 ;'little' delay subroutine ;;load counters ;;</pre>
d2: del del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end ays pro mov	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2 p c a,0ffh	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2 ;; count down count1 ;'little' delay subroutine ;;load counters</pre>
d2: del del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end ays pro mov mov	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2 p c a,0ffh count1,a count2,a	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2 ;; count down count1 ;'little' delay subroutine ;;load counters ;; ;;</pre>
d2: del del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end ays pro mov mov mov	<pre>a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2 p c a,0ffh count1,a count2,a count2</pre>	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2 ;; count down count1 ;'little' delay subroutine ;;load counters ;;</pre>
d2: del del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end ays pro mov mov mov sdz jmp	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2 p c a,0ffh count1,a count2,a count2 d3	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2 ;; count down count1 ;'little' delay subroutine ;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count2</pre>
d2: del del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end ays pro mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz	<pre>a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2 p c a,0ffh count1,a count2,a count2 d3 count1</pre>	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2 ;; count down count1 ;'little' delay subroutine ;;load counters ;; ;;</pre>
d2: del del	mov mov mov mov sdz jmp sdz jmp sdz jmp ret aym end ays pro mov mov mov sdz jmp	a,07h count1,a a,0ffh count2,a count3,a count3 d2 count2 d2 count1 d2 p c a,0ffh count1,a count2,a count2 d3	<pre>;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count3 ;; count down count2 ;; count down count1 ;'little' delay subroutine ;;load counters ;; ;; ;; ;; count down count2</pre>

300h	;TABLE
	; RYG RYG
0EBh	;1110 1011 G R
0FBh	;1111 1011 O R
0EBh	;1110 1011 G R
0FBh	;1111 1011 O R
0EBh	;1110 1011 G R
0FBh	;1111 1011 O R
0EBh	;1110 1011 G R
0FBh	;1111 1011 O R
0DBh	;1101 1011 Y R
OBEh	;1011 1110 R G
OBFh	;1011 1111 R O
OBEh	;1011 1110 R G
OBFh	;1011 1111 R O
OBEh	;1011 1110 R G
OBFh	;1011 1111 R O
OBEh	;1011 1110 R G
OBFh	;1011 1111 R O
OBDh	;1011 1101 R Y
	0EBh 0FBh 0FBh 0FBh 0FBh 0FBh 0BBh 0BFh 0BF

end

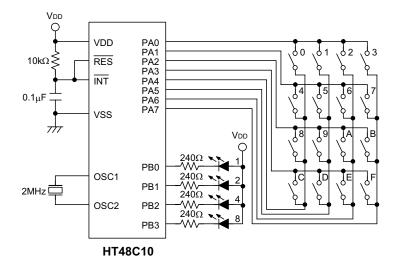
delays endp

#### Program description

The program begins (1) by setting the value of the port control register to determine which port bits are output and inputs. In this case each port bit of port control register PAC is set to 0 as all bits in this port are used as outputs. As the illuminated condition of the red, yellow and green lights is fixed a table read instruction can be used to determine their values as shown in section (2), however the values must first be setup. Because the last page TABRDL instruction is used the table data is setup from address 300h. The highest address is 3FFh. In section (5) the table pointer is incremented. In section (2) the display status of the LEDs is obtained from the table, this value being placed on the output port as shown in (3). Due to different timing delays being required for correct traffic light operation several procedures exist within the program to provide different timings as shown in (4) delayl, (7) delaym and (6) delays.



# **Keyboard Scanner**



This unit uses a 4×4 keyboard matrix, giving a total of 16 keys with each key representing a single hexadecimal value as shown in the diagram. The microcontroller program scans the keyboard matrix to detect which key was pressed and after detection displays on the LED display the corresponding hex code. There are 4 LEDs, so a range of values from 0000 to 1111 can be displayed. During the scanning process, if two keys are pressed simultaneously only the first key scanned will be detected and displayed. By using this method 8 logic lines can control up to 16 switches with required values assigned to each key.

#### **Circuit design**

PA0~PA3 are assigned as outputs and PA4~PA7 assigned as inputs, together forming a  $4\times4$  matrix. Note that during creation of the project, PA4~PA7 should have the pull-high option selected from the mask option. The program detects which key was pressed while a look up table defines the value of each key. PB0~PB3 are defined as outputs and represent a 4 bit hex code giving 16 different values with each value representing a single key.

#### Program

#include ht48c10.inc

```
; ------
data .section 'data'
temp db ?
```

;== data section == ;temporary data register

disp db countl db mask db matrix db	? ?		;key display register ;delay loop counter ;mask register ;key matrix register
, code .sect	ion at 0 co	ode ;==	<pre>program section ==</pre>
org	00h		;
jmp	start		;
org	04h		;external interrupt subroutine
reti			;for safeguard
org	08h		;timer/event 0 interrupt subroutine
reti			;for safeguard
org	0ch		;timer/event 1 interrupt subroutine
reti			;for safeguard
start:			;
clr	intc		;initialize registers
clr	tmrc		;to guarantee performance
clr	tmr		;(interrupts)
set	pac		;(ports)
set	pbc		;(input mode)
set	pcc		;
main:			
set	pac	;(1)	;set port A to input mode
clr	pbc		;set port B to output mode
clr	ра		;zero port A (latch=0)
set	pb		;off LEDs
keyloop:			;
mov	a,Ofeh	;(2)	;scan first row of keys
mov	matrix,a		;hold scan code
mov	pac,a		;pa.0 output 0 (latch)
mov	a,pa		;read input state
cpl	acc		;;complement input state
and	a,0f0h		;;
SZ	acc		; if any input?
jmp	get_key	(0)	;yes.get input info
mov	a,0fdh	;(2)	;no. scan second row
mov	matrix,a		;hold scan code
mov	pac,a		;pa.1 output 0 (latch)
mov	a,pa		;read input state
cpl	acc		;;complementl input state
and	a,0f0h		;;
SZ	acc		; if any input?
jmp	get_key	• (2)	;yes.get input info ;no.scan third row
mov	a,0fbh matrix,a	;(2)	;hold scan code
mov			;pa.2 output 0 (latch)
mov mov	pac,a a,pa		;read input state
cpl	a,pa acc		;;complement input state
and	a,0f0h		;;
ana	<i>a</i> , <i>o z o z</i>		· ·

	SZ	acc		; if any input?
	jmp	get_key		;yes.get input info
	mov	a,0f7h	;(2)	;no. scan fourth row
	mov	matrix,a		;hold scan code
	mov	pac,a		;output pa.3 0 (latch)
	mov	a,pa		;read input state
	cpl	acc		;;complement input state
	and	a,0f0h		;;
	SZ	acc		; if any input?
	jmp	get_key		;yes.get input info
	jmp	keyloop		;repeat from keyloop
get	_key:			;get input key info
	call	delays		;debounce
	mov	a,pa		;test port A
	or	a,Ofh		;
	cpl	acc		;
	SZ	acc		;any key hold?
	jmp	go_on		;yes.go on (some key is pressed)
	jmp	keyloop		;no. return to scan key again
go_		, .	(2)	
	call	key_in	;(3)	;calculate table index
	tabrdl		;(10)	;load display data
	mov	a,disp	. (11)	;;output data to port B
	mov	pb,a	;(11)	;;
leore	jmp	keyloop		; repeat keyloop
кеу	_in prod			;get key number
	mov	a,pa	; (4)	;;hold port A state
~ c +	mov	temp,a	, (4)	;;
get.	_releas			;wait for the key to be released
	mov	a,pa acc		;test port A state
	cpl and	acc a,OfOh		;
	sz	acc	;(6)	; if release?
		get releas		;no. keep up waiting
	jmp mov	a, Ofh	be	; yes. calculate key number
	andm	a, matrix	• (7)	;mask low nibble of scan code
	mov	a,0	, ( , )	; keep table index at register A
aet	row:	a, o		; calculate row number
gee.	_	matrix		; check each bit to get row number
	snz	status.0		:
	jmp	get next		; if zero goto get next
	clr	c		;
	add	a,4h	;(8)	; table index +4 (4 keys a row)
	jmp	get row	/	; continue calculating
qet	next:	<u> </u>		;
J -	mov	tblp,a		; hold table index at register TBLP
		a,0efh		;
	mov	a, vern		
	mov mov	mask,a		;mask=0111 1111
				;mask=0111 1111
	mov	mask,a		

```
get column:
                             ; calculate column number
                             ;load temp
    mov
           a, temp
                             ;test column number
           a,mask
    xor
    snz
           7.
           index
                             ;no. test next column
    jmp
                             ; yes. return (TBLP)
    ret
index:
                              :next column
    inc
           tblp
                      ; (9)
                             ;table index+1
    set
           С
                             ; shift mask left (LSB=1)
    rlc
           mask
                             ; repeat get column key in endp
    jmp
           get column
                             ;delay subroutine
delays proc
                             ;load counter
    mov
           a,Offh
    mov
           count1,a
d1:
    sdz
           count1
                              ; count down count1
    jmp
           d1
    ret
delays endp
    org
           300h
                             ; display data table
           Ofh, Oeh, Odh, Och ;key0, key1, key2, key3
    dc
    dc
           Obh,Oah,O9h,O8h ;key4, key5, key6, key7
    dc
           07h,06h,05h,04h ;key8, key9, keyA, keyB
    dc
           03h,02h,01h,00h ;keyC, keyD, keyE, keyF
    end
```

#### **Program description**

Section (1) defines whether the port bits are defined as inputs or outputs. The program enters a loop to determine which key is pressed. The code works by first scanning line by line to determine if any key has been pressed in that line. Because four keys are connected together in the same line, the software must determine the exact key, which has been pressed. For example in section (2) the first line is scanned to see if key 0~3 has been pressed. If so this code then jumps out of this scanning loop to a subsection (3), to determine which key connected to this line has been pressed. If not the code moves on to look at the line containing keys 4-7 and so on. After entering this code subsection, the code first stores the key value in a temporary register as shown in section (4). There then follows a short time delay (5), to take account of switch bounce and then code to determine when the switch has been released (6). The code will not continue until the key has been released. The next part is to determine which row has been pressed (7). When jumping from row to row the corresponding table address jumps by 4 bits each time (8). After determining the row, the pressed key connected to this row has to be found. To do this the value in the accumulator jumps in increments of one bit until the correct key is located, as shown in (9). The correct key has thus been found by first looking at the rows and

then at the columns and making the appropriate steps through the table values. In section (10) the table read instruction is used to determine the displayed value of the individual key, which is then placed on Port B which illuminates the corresponding LEDs.

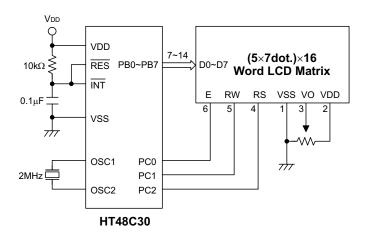
#### LCM

This unit describes the use of an 8-bit microcontroller used in conjunction with a DV16100NRB liquid crystal display. This LCM is driven and controlled by an internal Hitachi HD44780 device. In this application only the timing requirements of the LCM need to be considered to produce the correct microcontroller signals. For more detailed timing and instruction information, the LCM manufacturer's data should be consulted first.

LCMs can operate in either 4 bit or 8 bit mode. Using a 4 bit mode of operation, transmitting a character or an instruction to the module requires two transmission events to complete the operation. With an 8-bit mode of operation only one transmit event is required, however an extra 4 I/O lines are required. This section shows the use of the statements #define, if, else and endif.

#### **Circuit design**

PB0~PB7 are setup as I/O bits while PC0~PC2 as the LCM control lines are setup as outputs. These can be setup according to the specific user requirements.





#### Program

;============				
;= LCM.inc =				
;============				
;this header file	e depends	on what type of uC is used		
ifndef HEADER HI	-			
#define HEADER HT48C30				
#include ht4				
endif				
;				
;for DV-16100	NRB			
	QU 01H			
CURSOR HOME	EQU 02H			
CURSOR SR	EQU 14H			
CURSOR SL	EQU 10H			
INCDD CG SHF C	EQU 06H			
TURN ON DISP	EQU OFH			
LCD_ON_CSR_OFF	EQU OCH			
;				
, LCM DATA	EQU pb	;define port B equal LCM data port		
—	EQU pbc			
LCM CTRL	EQU pc			
LCM CTRL CTRL	EQU pcc	;		
;	_ <u></u>	, 		
,	mande and	control Signal name.		
E	EQU 0	; signal pin number		
RW	EQU 1	;		
RS	EQU 2	;		
;==========	LQO Z	/		
;= main.asm =				
;======================================				
#define HEADER H	IT 1 8 C 3 O			
<pre>#include ht48c30</pre>				
<pre>#include lcm.inc</pre>				
; ·				
, ;#define four bi	+	;define four bit for 4-bit mode		
extern busy chk		; import external module		
extern delay:nea		-		
extern write cha		;		
extern snd cmd:		;		
;		, 		
, data .section 'd	ata'	;== data section ==		
counter0 db ?	ucu	, data section		
counter1 db ?				
msg db ?				
tmp db?				
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •				
rode section at		== program section ==		
	, coue			
org 00H		;		

jmp	start	;
org	04h	;external interrupt subroutine
reti		; for safequard
org	08h	;timer/event 0 interrupt subroutine
reti		;for safeguard
org	0ch	;timer/event 1 interrupt subroutine
reti		;for safeguard
start:		;
clr	intc	;initialize registers
clr	tmrc	;to guarantee performance
clr	tmr	;(interrupts)
set	pac	; (ports)
set	pbc	;(input mode)
. set	pcc	;
main:		
clr	LCM_DATA_CTRL	; set LCM data port to output port
clr	LCM_CTRL_CTRL	;set LCM control port to output port
clr	LCM_DATA	
clr	LCM_CTRL	
DISPLAY_IN ifdef four		
mov	a,20h	; ;4-bit mode
else	a,2011	, 4 DIC MODE
mov	a,30h	;8-bit mode
endif	a, 5011	
mov	LCM_DATA,a	
set	LCM CTRL.E	;write instruction code to
clr	LCM CTRL.E	;initalize LCM
clr LCM DELAY:	LCM_CTRL.E	;initalize LCM ;delay for LCM setup timing
	—	;initalize LCM ;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms
LCM_DELAY:	—	;delay for LCM setup timing
LCM_DELAY: mov	a,Offh	;delay for LCM setup timing
LCM_DELAY: mov mov	_ a,Offh counter1,a	;delay for LCM setup timing
LCM_DELAY: mov mov mov	_ a,Offh counter1,a	;delay for LCM setup timing
LCM_DELAY: mov mov mov lp0:	a,Offh counter1,a counter0,a	;delay for LCM setup timing
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz	a, 0ffh counter1, a counter0, a	;delay for LCM setup timing
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp	a,0ffh counter1,a counter0,a counter1 lp0	;delay for LCM setup timing
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ:	a,0ffh counter1,a counter0,a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0	;delay for LCM setup timing
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp	a,0ffh counter1,a counter0,a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0	;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ: ifdef four mov	a,0ffh counter1,a counter0,a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0	;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte)
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ: ifdef four	a,0ffh counter1,a counter0,a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0 _bit a,28h	;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte) ;28h for 2 lines and 20h for 1 line
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp cMD_SEQ: ifdef four mov else mov	a,0ffh counter1,a counter0,a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0 _bit	<pre>;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte) ;28h for 2 lines and 20h for 1 line ;8-bit mode and 2 lines</pre>
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ: ifdef four mov else mov endif	a,0ffh counter1,a counter0,a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0 _bit a,28h a,38h	;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte) ;28h for 2 lines and 20h for 1 line ;8-bit mode and 2 lines ;38h for 2 lines and 30h for 1 line
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ: ifdef four mov else mov endif mov	a, 0ffh counter1, a counter0, a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0 _bit a, 28h a, 38h LCM_DATA, a	<pre>;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte) ;28h for 2 lines and 20h for 1 line ;8-bit mode and 2 lines</pre>
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ: ifdef four mov else mov endif mov set	a, 0ffh counter1, a counter0, a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0 	;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte) ;28h for 2 lines and 20h for 1 line ;8-bit mode and 2 lines ;38h for 2 lines and 30h for 1 line
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ: ifdef four mov else mov endif mov set clr	a, 0ffh counter1, a counter0, a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0 	;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte) ;28h for 2 lines and 20h for 1 line ;8-bit mode and 2 lines ;38h for 2 lines and 30h for 1 line
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ: ifdef four mov else mov endif mov set clr ifdef four	a, 0ffh counter1, a counter0, a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0 	;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte) ;28h for 2 lines and 20h for 1 line ;8-bit mode and 2 lines ;38h for 2 lines and 30h for 1 line ;
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ: ifdef four mov else mov endif mov set clr ifdef four mov	a, 0ffh counter1, a counter0, a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0 	;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte) ;28h for 2 lines and 20h for 1 line ;8-bit mode and 2 lines ;38h for 2 lines and 30h for 1 line
LCM_DELAY: mov mov lp0: sdz jmp sdz jmp CMD_SEQ: ifdef four mov else mov endif mov set clr ifdef four	a, 0ffh counter1, a counter0, a counter1 lp0 counter0 lp0 	;delay for LCM setup timing ;need about 4.5ms ; ;4-bit mode and 2 lines (2 pass/byte) ;28h for 2 lines and 20h for 1 line ;8-bit mode and 2 lines ;38h for 2 lines and 30h for 1 line ;

set LCM CTRL.E ; clr LCM CTRL.E ; ;check busy flag ;clean display call busy chk mov a, LCM CLS call snd\_cmd call busy\_chk ; ;check busy flag ;turn on display a, TURN\_ON\_DISP mov call snd\_cmd call busy\_chk ;check busy flag mov a, INCDD CG SHF C ; auto increase mode ; (cursor left and DD RAM address+1) call snd cmd ; -----; inc addr of DD ram & shift ; the cursor to the right at ;the time of write to DD/CG ;RAM. ; -----call busy\_chk ;check busy flag mov a,LCM\_CLS ;clear display call snd\_cmd call busy\_chk ; ;check busy flag \_ \_\_\_\_\_; check busy f
mov a, CURSOR\_HOME ; cursor home
call snd\_cmd ;
call busy\_chk ; check busy f
clr tblp ; load table p
ont check minimum ;check busy flag ;load table pointer (=0) ;start show "HOLTEK 8 bit µC" agn: tabrdl msg ;load message data mov a, msg ; mov tmp,a ; ;line end=24h mov a,24h xorm a,msg ; sz msg ; if line end? jmp agn1 ;no. show next char jmp secn line ;yes. show next line agn1: ;check busy flag call busy chk mov a, tmp ; ;write char to LCM ;next char (tblp+1) call write\_char inc tblp ;repeat from agn jmp agn secn line: ;next char (tblp+1) ;check busy flag inc tblp call busy chk mov a,0c0h ;move cursor to 2nd line call snd cmd ; (1st line:00h~, 2nd line:40h~) call busy\_chk snd line: tabrdl msg ;load message data mov a,msg ;

mov tmp,a ; ;line end=24h a,24h mov xorm a,msg ; sz msg ;if line end? jmp snd\_lin1 ;no. show next char a,LCD ON CSR OFF ;yes. hide cursor mov call snd cmd lp jmp ;goto lp (end) snd lin1: mov a,tmp ; call write\_char ;write char to LCM call busy\_chk ;check busy flag inc tblp ;tblp+1 jmp snd line ;repeat from snd line lp: jmp lp ;end program ; ----holtek\_tbl .section at 700h 'code' ;table at last page htk tbl: dc 0048h,004fh,004ch,0054h,0045h,004bh,0020h,0038h,0024h dc 0020h,0062h,0069h,0074h,0020h,0075h,0043h,0024h end ;module ;=========== ;= LCM.asm = include lcm.inc ; ------;#define four\_bit ;define this for 4-bit mode public busy chk ; public delay ; public write char ; public snd cmd ; ; ----dataLCM .section 'data' dtmp db ? dtmp2 db ? ; -----codeLCM .section 'code' ;=== snd cmd === snd cmd: ;=write instruction code= ifdef four\_bit ;4-bit mode mov dtmp,a and a,0f0h ;filter high nibble endif mov LCM\_DATA,a ;latch command ;RW=0 clr LCM CTRL.RW ;RS=0 LCM CTRL.RS clr set LCM\_CTRL.E clr LCM\_CTRL.E ;high set ;low (trigger) ifdef four bit

swapa dtmp and a,0f0h mov LCM\_DATA,a set LCM\_CTRL.E clr LCM\_CTRL.E endif ret ;== busy chk == busy chk: set LCM\_CTRL.RW set LCM\_CTRL.E mov a,LCM\_DATA clr LCM\_CTRL.E ifdef four bit and a,0f0h mov dtmp,a or a,dtmp endif sz acc.7 jmp busy\_chk ret ;== write char == write char: ifdef four bit mov dtmp,a and a,0f0h endif mov LCM DATA, a clr LCM\_CTRL.RW CIFLCM\_CIRL.KW, KW=0setLCM\_CTRL.RS; RS=1 (write opsetLCM\_CTRL.E; highclrLCM\_CTRL.E; low (trigger) ifdef four\_bit swapa dtmp and a,0f0h LCM\_DATA, a mov set LCM\_CTRL.E clr LCM\_CTRL.E endif ret ;== delay ==

;4-bit low nibble (two pass) ;latch command ;high ;low (trigger) set LCM\_CTRL.E ;ready to pulse (low) clr LCM\_CTRL.RS ;RS=0 set LCM\_CTRL\_PW ;pulse (high) ;load busy flag ;pulse (low) ;4-bit mode high nibble (1st pass) ; set LCM\_CTRL.E ;pulse (high) swapa LCM\_DATA ;a.3~a.0.7~m.4+, a.7~a.4.3~m.0 SwapaLon\_DifficlrLCM\_CTRL.Eanda.0fh;4-bit mode low nibble (2nd pass) ;combine 2 pass ;is busy? ;yes. check again clr LCM\_CTRL.RW ;no.go ahead
clr LCM\_DATA\_CTRL ;set LCM\_DATA to output port ;=write data to LCM= ;4-bit mode (2 pass) ;filter high nibble ;latch data ;RW=0 ;RS=1 (write operation);high ;4-bit mode (2nd pass) ;filter low nibble ;latch data ;high ;low (trigger)



```
delay:
                                  ;=delay for a while=
    mov
           dtmp,a
    drep:
    sdz
           dtmp2
                                  ; count down dtmp2
    jmp
           drep
                                  ; count down dtmp
    sdz
           dtmp
           drep
    jmp
    ret
end ;module
```

#### **Program description**

The program begins by calling in include files and by defining the LCM to be on Port B. The LCM control lines are defined on Port C. External modules are also declared to define whether the LCM is in 4-bit or 8-bit mode.

The LCM will automatically conduct an internal reset during power-up. However most program controlled LCMs will still utilize software for their initialization. In this example the code begins at start by running some initialization code. According to the data for the HD44780, there needs to be at least 4.5 ms delay between each program. This is the function of the LCM\_DELAY code section. Before the LCM initialization has been carried out it is not possible to check the status of BUSY. To issue instructions to the LCM refer to the HD44780 instruction definitions. The code section LCM.INC contains several often used instructions. Before the LCM writes instructions it must first check whether LCM is in a busy condition. The code section BUSY\_CHK exists to check the BUSY status of the LCM. After checking this, data can then be sent to the LCM. The ASCII codes to be displayed should be placed in the last page of the program, and a table look up method used to place the data in the accumulator, from where the code section WRITE\_CHAR can display it on the LCM.

Operation truth table of signal RS, R/W and E:

RS	RW	E	Operation
0	0		Write instruction code
0	1		Read busy flag & address counter
1	0		Write data
1	1		Read data

#### Using an I/O Port as a Serial Application

This section shows code to simulate serial port operation. This can be used as a basis for the development of simple serial port applications such as 8-bit communication, non-parity, single stop bit applications. Here the example is given as a project with the user left to decide which pins are send and receive and the baudrate decided by the system frequency. Below are the steps taken and other points to be noted.

- Create a new file called DFSERIPT.INC in the directory \HT-IDE2000\INCLUDE\Here must be included ...
  - Baudrateconst XXX. This value XXX can be taken from a table or calculated (ignore the decimal point)
  - TXPIN ..... the defined transmit pin
  - RXPIN ..... the defined receive pin
- The serial port program uses 4 RAM locations, 2 I/O pins and 49 program memory locations. The TXPIN must be defined as an output and RXPIN defined as an input.
- Before Call or Receive, the RXPINs stop bit condition must be checked Calling these two subroutines will change the condition of the carry flag.
- When using Routines, the program must first declare them as follows: EXTERN TRANSMIT: NEAR EXTERN RECEIVE: NEAR
- Below the main program serial.asm must be added. The parameter baudrateconst is calculated from the baudrate as follows. Baudrateconst = (Fsys/(baudrate\*12))-3 (ignore the decimal point)
- **Note** The best value for baudrateconst is within a range of 7 to 256, the bigger the value the smaller the error. The following table gives some direct values.

Refer to the table below:

Baudrate/Fsys	4MHz	2MHz	1MHz
9600	31	14	Х
7200	43	20	8
4800	66	31	14
3600	89	43	20
2400	135	66	31
2000	163	80	38
1800	182	89	43
1200	Х	135	66

**Note** <u>X</u> means unable to use, reduce either Fsys or the baudrate.

#### Program

;======= ;= Dfseri	pt.inc =	
;======== BAUDRATEC TXPIN EQ	ONST EQU 66	;table look-up (4MHz, 4800 bits/second) ;or calculate (see HT-IDE2000 User's Guide) ;transmit pin
RXPIN EÇ	)UPA.2	;receive pin
;=======		
;= Main.a	sm =	
;=======		
	EADER_HT48C70	
	ht48c70.inc	
	dfseript.inc	
;#define	TRANSMIT_MODE	;define TRANSMIT_MODE for transmit mode
		;default is receive mode
	ansmit:near	;external functions
	eceive:near	
		;== data section ==
	_data db ?	, data section
receive c		
	db ?	
,		;== program section ==
org		;
jmp	start	;
org	04h	;external interrupt subroutine
reti		;for safeguard
org	08h	;timer/event 0 interrupt subroutine
reti		;for safeguard
org	0ch	;timer/event 1 interrupt subroutine
reti		;for safeguard
start:		;
clr		;initialize registers
clr		; to guarantee performance
clr	tmr0h	;(interrupts)
clr	tmrOl	;
clr clr		;
clr	tmr1h tmr1l	;
set	pac	; ;(ports)
set	pac pbc	; (input mode)
set	pcc	; (Input mode)
set	pdc	;
500	200	'

```
pec
   set
                          ;
   set pfc
                          ;
   set pgc
                          ;
main:
                        ;set receive pin to input mode
   set pac.2
                         ;set transmit pin to output mode
   clr pac.3
loop:
ifdef TRANSMIT MODE
                         ;transmit mode
   mov a,32
                         ;transmit 32 bytes
   mov counter,a
   clr tblp
                         ;tble=0 (data pointer)
again:
   tabrdl transmit_data ;load transmit data
   mov a, transmit data
   call transmit ;transmit
   inc tblp ;tble+1 (point content,
sdz counter ;transmit over? (counter-1)
imp again ;no. next byte
   jmp loop
                         ;repeat from loop else
   mov a,40h
                         ;receive mode
   mov mp0,a
                         ;mp0-receive buffer (40h~5Fh)
   mov a,32
                         ;load counter
   mov counter,a
                         ;
again:
                      ;receive 1 byte
   call receive
   mov r0,a
                         ; put received data to buffer
   inc mp0
                         ;buffer index+1
   sdz counter
                         ;receive over?
   jmp again
                         ;no. continue receiving
   jmp
         $
                          ;yes. stop program
endif
test .section at 1f00h 'code'
test table:
                          ;data fo transmitting (32 bytes)
   dc 012h,034h,056h,078h,09ah,0bch,0deh,0f0h,011h,022h,033h,
      044h,055h,066h,077h,088h
   dc 099h,0aah,0bbh,0cch,0ddh,0eeh,0ffh,000h,055h,0aah,055h,
0aah,055h,0aah,055h,0aah
   end
;= Serial.asm =
;serial port library
ifndef HEADER HT48C70
                          ; depends on what type of IC is selected
#define HEADER HT48C70
#include ht48c70.inc
endif
#include dfseript.inc
public transmit
                         ;external functions
public receive
                          ;
baudrate equ baudrateconst ; replace baudrate with
```

baudratec	onst	
tx	equ txpin	;replace txpin with tx
rx	equ rxpin	;replace rxpin with rx
sdata .sec	ction data ;	
count db	?	;serial bit counter
txreg db	?	;transmit data register
rcreg db		;receive data register
delay db	?	;delay counter
serial.se	ection 'code'	;
transmit p	proc	;transmit a byte (Acc)
mov	txreg,a	;hold Acc at txreg
mov	a,baudrate	;load delay counter
mov	delay,a	;
clr	tx	;send start bit '0'
mov	a,9	;load bit counter
mov	count,a	;
txdelay:		;
sdz	delay	;delay to fit baudrate
jmp	txdelay	;
mov	a,baudrate	;reload delay counter
mov	delay,a	;
sdz	count sendbit	; if transmit over?
jmp	endtx	;no. send next bit
jmp sendbit:	enacx	;yes.go ahead
rrc	txreg	;shift right through carry flag
snz	C	; is '1'
jmp	lobit	;no.goto lobit
set	tx	;yes. Send '1'
jmp	txdelay	;repeat from txdelay
lobit:	4	;
clr	tx	;send '0'
jmp	txdelay	;repeat from txdelay
endtx:	-	;
nop		;delay for a while
nop		;
set	tx	;send stop bit '1'
t1:		;
sdz	delay	;delay between bits
jmp	t1	;(timing adjustment)
mov	a,baudrate	;
mov	delay,a	;
t2:		;
sdz	delay	;
jmp	t2	;
ret	andn	;
transmit	endp	i
receive pr	rx	;receive a byte ;if start bit '0'
sz jmp	rx receive	; no. test again
Jurb	TECETAE	, no. lest again

```
mov
         a,9
                             ; yes. start receiving
         count,a
                             ;load bit counter
   mov
         a,baudrate+1
   mov
                            ;load delay counter
         delay,a
                            ; (+1 for timing adjustment)
   mov
rxdelay:
                             ;
   sdz
                            ;delay to fit baudrate
         delay
         rxdelay
   jmp
                             ;
         a,baudrate+1
                            ;reload delay counter
   mov
   mov
         delay,a
                             ; (+1 for timing adjustment)
                             ; if receive over?
   sdz
         count
   jmp
         rxbit
                            ;no. receive next bit
         a,rcreg
                            ; yes. put received data to Acc
   mov
   ret
                             ;
rxbit:
                             ;
   set c
                            ;c=1
   snz rx
                            ; if received '1'?
                            ;no. c=0
   clr
         С
   rrc rcreg
                            ; shift left through carry flag
   jmp rxdelay
                           ; repeat from rxdelay
receive endp
                             ;
   end
```

#### **Program description**

The most important element here is the baudrate parameter because the transmiting and receiving of data have to be coordinated with the baudrate speed. For this reason a formula as well as a table is provided to define this constant. Because in this example the baudrate is not defined by using the timer/counter some small discrepencies may exist, however according to our tests using an 8051 the values given in the table are error free. The higher the baudrate parameter the lower the error rate so by adjusting the value of baudrate and system frequency the baudrate parameter value can be raised.



Chapter 17

# Interrupt and Timer/Counter Applications

There are many different methods of using a timer/counter method to implement an interrupt. For example, if it is required to have a timed signal, or after a fixed or non-fixed period of time to have an event occur, the timer counter can be used. During the specified time or count period, the main program can continue with other functions, when the time or count period is over an interrupt will be activated. This interrupt can then be used to run special interrupt code or trigger other special functions. When the interrupt function ends the code returns to running the main program.

The Holtek HT48X00 microcontroller series timer/counter possess either 16 bit or 8 bit counters. All are count up types. The values are first converted into 2 s complement and then the 16 or 8 bit value loaded into the timer/counter. Additionally the timer/counters can be divided up into three types, event counter, timer or pulse width measurement type. The event counter type receives generated signals from outside while the timer type uses the internal system clock as its base timing.

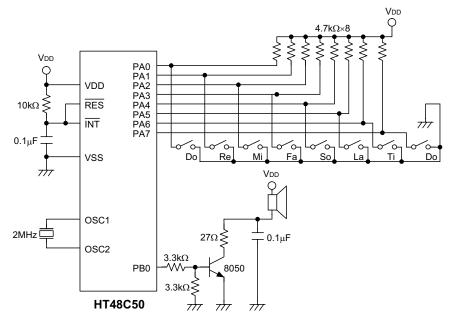
#### **Electronic Piano**

This unit describes how to implement a scanning keyboard and then from the pressed key generate a corresponding defined sound frequency. Each time a key is pressed the corresponding frequency value is placed into the timer/counter register. When this counter counts to its maximum value an internal interrupt is generated and the interrupt routine is run. At this point the timer/counter register value is reloaded and the counting continues. In this way, by programming different values into the timer/counter register, different values of frequency can be generated. The internal interrupt routine contains code to change the state of the output port and thus

generate the required frequency on a corresponding pin and create the desired note. By adding a suitable amplifier and speaker the system is complete. The important points of the software is to use the timer/counter as a counter to control the output frequency. This frequency has to be calculated.

#### **Circuit design**

PA0~PA7 are setup as inputs with each line connected to a pull up resistor. Pressing a key will bring the corresponding line low. PB0 is setup as an output and is the line where the required frequency appears. By changing this line from hi to lo and vice-versa the required frequency can be generated.



#### Program

#include ht48c50.inc ;== data section == data .section data temp db ? ; hold temporary data ;hold freq. sound db ? code .section at 0 code ;== program section == 00h org ; jmp start ; org 04h ;external interrupt subroutine reti ; for safeguard

		0.01		
	org	08h		;timer/event 0 interrupt subroutine
	cpl	pb	;(6)	;generate square wave
	reti			;end timer0 ISR
	org	0ch		;timer/event 1 interrupt subroutine
	reti			;for safeguard
st	art:			;
	clr	intc		;initialize registers
	clr	tmr0c		;to guarantee performance
	clr	tmrOh		;(interrupts)
	clr	tmrOl		;
	clr	tmrlc		;
	clr	tmr1		;
	set	pac		;(ports)
	set	pbc		;(input mode)
	set	pcc		;
	set	pdc		;
ma	in:			
	set	pac	;(1)	;set port A to input port
	clr	pbc		;set port B to output port
	clr	pb		;
ke	yloop:		;(2)	;
	mov	a,pa		;test any input
	cpl	acc		;
	SZ	acc		; if any?
	call	whichkey		;yes. find out which key
	jmp	keyloop		;no. repeat from keyloop
wh	ichkey p	roc	;(3)	; find out which key
	mov	temp,a		;hold Acc content
	mov	a,0		;zero table index
	mov	tblp,a		;
	clr	С		;c=0 (check each bit(key) by carry
fl	.ag)			
ke	ynext:			;
	rrc	temp		;shift right through carry flag
	SZ	status.0		; if carry? (some key was pressed)
	jmp	timerset		;yes. output sound
	inc	tblp	;(4)	;no. table index point to next
	inc	tblp		;(2 bytes/key)
	jmp	keynext		;check next bit (key)
ti	merset:			;set timer to generate sound
	mov	a,5		;enable timer0
	mov	intc,a		;
	mov	a,80h		;set timer0 mode (internal clock)
	mov	tmr0c,a		;
	tabrdl	sound	;(5)	;load freq.
	mov	a,sound		; (low byte)
	mov	tmr0l,a		;
	inc	tblp		;
	tabrdl	sound	;(6)	;(high byte)
	mov	a, sound		;

```
tmr0h,a
    mov
                              ;
           tmr0c.4
                             ;start timer0
    set
key halt:
                      ;(7)
                             ; check key holding state
    mov
           a,pa
                             ;test pa
    cpl
           acc
                             ; is holding?
    SΖ
           acc
           key halt
    jmp
                             ;yes. check again
    clr
           tmr0c.4
                      ; (8)
                             ;no. stop timer (stop sound two)
    clr
           pb
    ret
whichkey endp
                              ;
    org Of00h
                              ; sound freq.
    dc 21h,0feh,58h,0feh
    dc 84h, 0feh, 99h, 0feh
    dc 0c1h,0feh,0e3h,0feh
    dc 02h,0ffh,11h,0ffh
    end
```

#### **Program description**

The program begins (1) by setting all pins on Port A to inputs by setting the Port A control register PAC high. Port B is setup as outputs by clearing its control register PBC. After this the program enters a program loop (2) to detect if a key has been pressed. If a key has been pressed the program jumps out of this loop otherwise it will remain in this loop until a key is pressed. The next stage is a program to determine which key was pressed (3). Determining which key is pressed enables the correct frequency value to be obtained from the table. This is done by incrementing the table pointer until the correct location is reached. The value is divided into a high byte and low byte, these two values have to be placed in the correct high/low byte position of the timer/counter (5). After the value is placed and counted an interrupt is generated by the timer/counter and the interrupt routine is run and the correct output (6) placed on Port B. In this way the correct frequency can be generated. The Port B output pin is connected to a suitable amplifier and speaker to generate the correct tone.

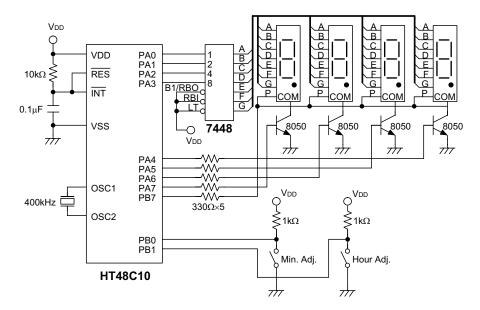
After detecting the key and obtaining the correct frequency value the key is again examined (7) to see if it has been released. This is because the timer/counter will continue to be reloaded so if the key is not released the note will continue to appear on Port B. If the key has been released (8) then the control bit is set to turn off the timer/counter.

#### Clock

This application shows the use of the 16 bits of the timer counter to generate internal interrupts and consequently generate a timing function. This application depends upon the system clock frequency as a basis for its timing. The application shown here uses a 400kHz system clock which will generate a 100kHz timer/counter clock due to the internal divide by four operation. With a 16 bit counter the maximum count is 65536, this would generate an internal interrupt every 0.65536 seconds. However for a clock function a basic time unit of 1 second is required so for this reason the timer/counter is setup to record a basic timing of 0.5 seconds. In this case an interrupt will be generated every 0.5 seconds, so by counting two interrupts a means of obtaining the basic timing unit of 1 second is obtained. The application shown uses 4 seven segment displays to display a clock in 24 hour format, displaying both hours and minutes. Two keys are provided to provide for adjustment of hours and minutes.

#### **Circuit design**

PA0~PA7 are setup as outputs with PA0~PA3 setup as the display data. PA4~PA7 provide scanning inputs to the control transistors for the segment displays. These will scan the individual displays one after the other. PB0 and PB1 are setup as inputs for the switches which enable the hours and minutes to be preset.



#### Program

#include ht48c50.inc

# 1101 ddo 110 10 000 • 1110	
;	
data.section data	;== data section ==
second db ?	;hold second
minl db ?	;hold minute low byte
minh db ?	;hold minute high byte
hourl db ?	;hold hour low byte
hourh db ?	;hold hour high byte
count1 db ?	;delay counter
mask db ?	;hold mask
disp db ?	;hold display data
;	
code .section at 0 code	;== program section ==
org 00h	;
jmp start	;
org 04h	;external interrupt subroutine
reti	; for safeguard
org 08h	;timer/event 0 interrupt subroutine
inc second	;second+1 (unit: 0.5second)
cpl pb	;flash dot (on 0.5s then off 0.5s)
reti	;end ISR
org Och	;timer/event 1 interrupt subroutine
reti	; for safeguard
start:	;
clr intc	; initialize registers
clr tmr0c	; to guarantee performance
clr tmr0h	; (interrupts)
clr tmr0l	;
clr tmrlc	;
clr tmr1	,
set pac	, ;(ports)
set pbc	; (input mode)
1 I	-
1	;
set pdc	;
main:	
clr pac ;(1)	; set port A to output port
mov a,7fh	; set port B to input port
mov pbc,a	;exclude pb.7
clr pb ;(2)	;zero variables
clr pa	;
clr minl	;
clr minh	;
clr hourl	;
clr hourh	;
clr second	;
mov a,05h	;enable timer0
mov intc,a	;
mov a,80h	;set timer0 mode (internal clock)

r	mov	tmr0c,a	;
r	mov	a,0b0h ;(5)	;load timer0 counter (0.5 second)
r	mov	tmrOl,a	;(low byte)
r	mov	a,3ch	;
r	mov	tmr0h,a	;(high byte)
5	set	tmr0c.4	;start timer0
loop	:	;(3)	;
r	mov	a,0	;zero table index
r	mov	tblp,a	i
r	mov	a,minl	;load display data
r	mov	disp,a	; ( low minute)
C	call	show clock	;show displaying up (4th 7-segment)
1	inc	tblp	;
r	mov	a,minh	;load displaying data
r	mov	disp,a	; (high minute)
	call	show clock	; show displaying up (3rd 7-segment)
	inc	tblp	;
	mov	a,hourl	; ;load displaying data
	mov	disp,a	; (low hour)
	call	show clock	; show displaying up (2nd 7-segment)
	inc	tblp	;
	mov	a, hourh	;load displaying data
	mov	disp,a	; ( high hour)
	call	show_clock	; show displaying up (1st 7-segment)
-	ami		
; -	jmp 	loop 	;repeat from loop
;		loop	
; cal_:	jmp  number inc	loop	;repeat from loop
; - ; cal_:	number inc	loop 	<pre>;repeat from loop ;</pre>
; - ; cal_: r	number inc	loop proc minl	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ; ;minl+1</pre>
; cal_: r	number inc mov	loop proc minl a,minl	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ; ;minl+1</pre>
; cal_: r	number inc mov sub	loop proc minl a,minl a,Oah	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;</pre>
;	number inc mov sub sz	loop proc minl a,minl a,Oah	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return</pre>
;	number inc mov sub sz ret	loop proc minl a,minl a,Oah acc	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0</pre>
;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc	<pre>loop proc minl a,minl a,0ah acc minl minh</pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1</pre>
;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc	<pre>loop proc minl a,minl a,0ah acc minl minh a,minh</pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ;</pre>
;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov	<pre>loop proc minl a,minl a,0ah acc minl minh a,minh a,06h</pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ;</pre>
;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub	<pre>loop proc minl a,minl a,0ah acc minl minh a,minh</pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes.minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes?</pre>
;; cal_;; cal_;; r s s cal_;; r r s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz	<pre>loop proc minl a,minl a,Oah acc minl minh a,minh a,O6h acc</pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return</pre>
;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr	<pre>loop proc minl a,minl a,Oah acc minl minh a,minh a,O6h acc minh</pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0</pre>
;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; ; cal_; ;; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr mov	<pre>loop proc minl a,minl a,Oah acc minl minh a,minh a,O6h acc minh a,hourh</pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0 ;</pre>
;; cal_;; cal_;; r s s s c c c c c c c c c c cal_;; c cal;; c c cal;; c cal;; c cal;; c cal;; c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr mov sub	<pre>loop </pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0 ; ;</pre>
;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr mov sub sz	<pre>loop </pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0 ; ; ;if over 20 hours?</pre>
;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr mov sub sz jmp	<pre>loop proc minl a,minl a,Oah acc minl minh a,O6h acc minh a,O2h acc h_20</pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0 ; ; ;if over 20 hours? ;no. goto h_20</pre>
;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr mov sub sz jmp inc	<pre>loop </pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0 ; ; ;if over 20 hours? ;no. goto h_20 ;yes. hourl+1</pre>
; cal_s cal_s r s s s c c c c c r r s s s s r c c l r r s s r s r s s r c s r r r s s s r r s s r r r s s r r r r r s s r r r r s s r r r r r s s r r r s s r r r s s r s r r r s r s r r s r s r r s r s r s r s r s r s r s s r s r s r s r s s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s r s s r s r s r s r s r s s r s r s r s r s s r s r s r s s s s r s s r s s s s s s r s s s s s r s s r s	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr mov sub sz jmp inc mov	<pre>loop </pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0 ; ; ;if over 20 hours? ;no. goto h_20</pre>
;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; ; cal_; ; ;; ; cal_; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr mov sub sz jmp inc mov sub	<pre>loop </pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0 ; ; ;if over 20 hours? ;no. goto h_20 ;yes. hourl+1 ; ;</pre>
;; cal_; ;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr mov sub sz jmp inc mov sub	<pre>loop </pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0 ; ; ;if over 20 hours? ;no. goto h_20 ;yes. hourl+1 ; ; ;if over 24 hours?</pre>
;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; cal_; ;; ; cal_; ; ;; ; cal_; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	number inc mov sub sz ret clr inc mov sub sz ret clr mov sub sz jmp inc mov sub	<pre>loop </pre>	<pre>;repeat from loop ; ;minl+1 ; ;if over 10 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minl=0 ;minh+1 ; ; ;if over 60 minutes? ;no. return ;yes. minh=0 ; ; ;if over 20 hours? ;no. goto h_20 ;yes. hourl+1 ; ;</pre>

	clr	hourh		;hourh=0
	ret			;return
h_2	0:			;
	inc	hourl		;hourl+1
	mov	a,hourl		;
	sub	a,Oah		;
	SZ	acc		; if over 10 hours?
	ret			;no. return
	clr	hourl		;yes.hourl=0
	inc	hourh		;hourh+1
	ret			;return
cal	_number	endp		;
; -				
sho	w_clock	-		;
	mov	a,1fh		;load counter
		count1,a		;
	tabrdl			;load mask
	mov	a,mask		; (active some 7-segment LED)
	or	a,disp		;mask displaying data
	mov	pa,a		; (update the 7-segment LED)
d1:				;
		pb.0	;(4)	; if key Min. Adj. is being pressed?
	jmp	min_inc		;yes. deal with it
pre	snz ssed?	pb.1	;(4)	;no. if key Hour Adj is beeing
	jmp	hour_inc		;yes.deal with it
	mov	a,second		;no. check sceond overflow
	clr	С		;
	sub	a,78h	;(6)	;78h=120 (unit: 0.5 second)
	SZ	acc		; if overflow?
	jmp	scan_next		;no. continue scanning
	clr	second		;yes.secon=0
	call	cal_number	;('/)	;calculate clock digits
	ret			;
scai	n_next:			;
	sdz	count1		; if count over (counter-1)
	jmp	dl		;no. scan keys again
	ret			;yes.return
111 III -	_inc:	delesse		;
		delays		;delay for key releasing
	snz jmp	pb.0 min inc		;if key was released? ;no. test again
	-	_		
	call clr	inc_min second		;yes. minute+1 ;second=0 (reset secnod)
	clr	tmr0c.4		;stop timer0
	mov	a,0b0h	;(5)	;reload timer0 counter
	mov	tmr01,a	, (3)	;
	mov	a,3ch		;(0.5 second)
	mov	tmr0h,a		:
	set	tmr0c.4		;restart timer0
	200			, _ c c c a c c mor o

mov mov mov	<pre>second tmr0c.4 a,0b0h ;(5) tmr01,a a,3ch tmr0h,a tmr0c.4</pre>	; ;delay for key releasing ;if key was released? ;no. test again ;yes. hour+1 ;second=0 ;stop timer0 ;reload timer0 counter ; ;(0.5 second) ; ;restart timer0 ;
;		
org		;mask data
dc	10h,20h,40h,80h	
;		
delays pro mov	oc a,7fh	;
mov	count1,a	;load counter
d2:	counci, a	;
	count1	; count down count1
	d2	;
ret	ũ2	;
delays en	ap	;
;	-	· 
inc_hour p	proc	;
mov	a,hourh	;
sub	a,02h	;
SZ	acc	;if over 20 hours
jmp	h_201	;no.goto h_201
inc	hourl	;yes.hourl+1
mov	a,hourl	;
sub	a,04h	;
SZ	acc	;if over 24 hours?
ret		;no. return
clr	hourl	;yes.hourl=0
clr	hourh	;hourh=0
ret		;return
h_201:	h 1	;
inc	hourl	;hourl+1
mov	a,hourl	;
sub	a,Oah acc	; ;if over 10 hours?
sz ret	acc	;no. return
clr	hourl	;yes.hourl=0
inc	hourh	; hourh=0
1110		, nouth o

```
ret
                               ;
inc hour endp
                               ;
  _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
inc min proc
                               ;
    inc
                               ;minl+1
           minl
           a,minl
    mov
                               ;
           a,0ah
    sub
    SΖ
           acc
                               ; if over 10 minutes?
    ret
                               ;no. return
    clr
           minl
                               ;yes.minl=0
    inc
           minh
                               ;minh=0
    mov
           a,minh
    sub
           a,06h
                               ;
           acc
                               ; if over 60 minutes?
    SΖ
    ret
                               ;no. return
    clr
           minh
                               ; yes. minh=0 (don t care hour)
                               ;return
    ret
inc min endp
                               ;
    end
```

#### **Program description**

The program begins (1) by defining A as outputs, achieved by setting the control register PAC to 00. With the exception of bit 7, all bits in Port B are set as inputs, achieved by setting the control register PBC to 7F. The next stage (2) is to clear various internal locations of the RAM and enable the interrupt and timer/counter. Following on from this (3) is the program to display the time and the program to determine if any key has been pressed. If the time is to be adjusted because a key has been pressed then the program calls a routine (4) to adjust either the minutes or the hour. A value of one will be added to either the minute or hour value. If the minute value has reached 59 the next value will be set to 00 but the hour value will not be increased. Similarly if the hour value has reached 23 the next value will be 00 but the minute value will not be changed. If no key has been pressed the program remains in the program loop to display the time. Because the program has been setup to provide an interrupt every 0.5 seconds, a 1 minute time interval is generated every 120 interrupts. Each time this happens the minutes count will be increased by one. During the program loop to display the time, the program will look at the interrupt count number to determine if a value of 120 has been reached (6). If so then the minutes count will be increased by one (7). Every 60 minutes will become a count of one hour and after 23 hours the hour count will reset to 00 hours. The information containing the time for the display is placed upon 4 bits of Port A and the scanning operation on the remaining 4 bits. In this way the display is only active for a certain period of time, but because the scanning speed is high the display appears to be showing its data continuously.



Chapter 18

### Parallel Port

# 18

This section describes a parallel port application. The speed of parallel ports is higher than serial ports as there are more lines involved in the data transfer. Most parallel port line applications use TTL standard voltage levels, therefore operate best within a line range of several feet. Lines of excessive length, due to the increases resistance of the lines, can generate erroneous data transfers. For these reasons, parallel port applications are normally only used for short length data transfer operations. Because parallel port applications require several data lines to transmit data and because several control lines are also required the application is well suited for the HT48x00 series of controllers.

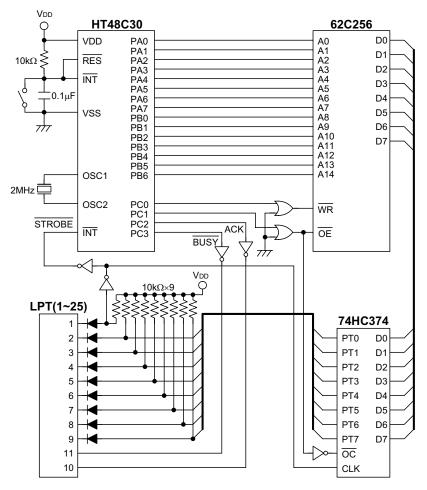
#### **ROM Emulator**

During the first stages of system development it is normally impractical to burn the required ROM. The usual procedure is to use a suitable EPROM to replace the ROM during the stages of program and system development. In this way, by using an ultra-violet light source, the internal EPROM programmed data can be erased and the device reused. The inconvenience in this approach is however, using an ultraviolet light source and the time required to erase the data. An alternative solution, which overcomes these EPROM limitations, is to use a ROM emulator. This application uses the PCs printer port to download data into the ROM emulator SRAM. Such a ROM emulator can reduce significantly early program development effort. In this application the design is implemented using the HT48300, 28-pin microcontroller.

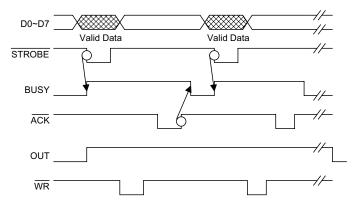


#### **Circuit design**

I/O lines PA0~PA7, PB0~PB7 and PC0~PC3 are defined as outputs. Port A is defined as the low order bits while Port B is defined as the high order bits. Port C is for the control lines. To use in a practical application it is necessary to connect both the address and data lines of the SRAM to the ROM socket of the application.



The program has to follow the parallel port conventions and timing diagram. For this reason the timing specification of the PC printer port can be consulted to achieve the correct operation.



#### Program

#include	ht48300.inc	
; data .se addrl db addrh db timer_ov	ection 'data' ? ? db ?	; data section ; low byte address register ; high byte address register ; timer overflow register
; – – – – – ; PCC ; PC1 ; PC2 ; PC3	OE ACK	
; code .se org jmp org jmp org jmp org jmp org	ection at 0 'code 00h start 04h int_sub 08h timer_sub 0Ch	' ; program section ; ISR address setup ; external INT ISR ; ; timer ISR ;
int_sub: mov mov reti timer sub:	a,00000011b pc,a ;(5	; ; move acc=00000011, ; (BUSY=0, ACK=0, OE=1, WR=1) ; output acc to port c ; return from external ISR ;
inc ter mov	timer_ov a,timer_ov	, ; increment timer overflow regis- ;

xor	a,20h		; timer overflow register "XOR"
			; with 20h
SZ	acc		; check over 20h
jmp	timer_nov		; if not over 20h , jump timer_nov
mov	a,00001011b		;
reti		;(4)	; return from ISR
timer_nov	:		; timer_nov
clr	acc		;
reti			; return ISR
start:			; program start
mov	a <b>,</b> 07h	;(1)	; setup INTC (external INT ON,
			; timer ON)
mov	intc,a		;
mov	a <b>,</b> 80h		; setup timer mode (internal
clock)			
mov	mrc,a		;
clr	pcc		; set port C as output port
top:		;(13)	; top
set	pac	;(12)	; set port A as input port
set	pbc		; set port B as input port
clr	addrl		; clear low byte address register
clr	addrh		; clear high byte address register
mov	a,00001001b		; move acc=00001001,
			; (BUSY=1, ACK=0, OE=0, WR=1)
mov	pc,a	;(3)	; output acc to port C
clr	acc		;
store:			; store
snz	acc.0	; (4)	; check acc.0="0".if external INT
			; interrupt, will change acc.0="1"
jmp	store		; if acc.0="0" jump store
clr	pac	;(5)	; if acc.0="1", set port A as
			; output port
clr	pbc		; set port B as output port
next:	*		; next
mov	a,addrl	;(6)	
mov	pa,a		; output low byte address register
	1 - / -		; to port A
mov	a,addrh		;
mov	pb,a		; output low byte address register
	Tree, er		; to port B
inc	addrl		; increment low byte address reg-
ister	44411		, inclosed for syce address reg
SZ	addrl		; check if equal to 0
jmp	no inc		; if not 0 jump no inc
mov	a,1		;
addm	a,addrh		; increment high byte address
			; register
no_inc:			; no_inc
mov	a,00000010b		; move acc=00000010,
			; $(\overline{\text{BUSY}}=0, \text{ACK}=0, \overline{\text{OE}}=1, \overline{\text{WR}}=0)$

	mov	pc,a	;(7)	; output acc to port C
	mov	a,10h	(0)	; setup delay time
		delays	;(8)	; call delays subroutine
	mov	a,00000011b		; move acc=00000011,
				; $(\overline{\text{BUSY}}=0, \text{ACK}=0, \overline{\text{OE}}=1, \overline{\text{WR}}=1)$
	mov	pc,a		; output acc to port C
	mov	a,7		; setup delay time
	call	delays		; call delays subroutine
	mov	a,00000111b		; move acc=00000111,
				; $(\overline{\text{BUSY}}=0, \text{ACK}=1, \overline{\text{OE}}=1, \overline{\text{WR}}=1)$
	mov	pc,a		; output acc to port C
	mov	a,5		; setup delay time
	call	delays		; call delays subroutine
	mov	a,00000011b		; move acc=00000011,
				; $(\overline{\text{BUSY}}=0, \text{ACK}=0, \overline{\text{OE}}=1, \overline{\text{WR}}=1)$
	mov	pc,a	;(9)	; output acc to port C
	mov	a,5		; setup delay time
	call	delays		; call delays subroutine
	clr	tmr		; clear timer
	set	tmrc.4	;(10)	; setup timer control reg. start
				; counting
	mov	a,00001011b		; move acc=00001011,
				; (BUSY=1, ACK=0, OE=1, WR=1)
	mov	pc,a	;(11)	; output acc to port C
	clr	acc		; clear acc
stc	rel:			; storel
	snz	acc.0	; (4)	; check if acc.0="0" .if external
				; INT
				; interrupt, will change acc.0="1"
	jmp	storel		; if "O" jump storel
	clr	tmrc.4		; set timer control reg. stop
				; counting
	snz	acc.3	;(12)	; check acc.3=1 (acc.3="1" timer
				; time-out,acc.3="0"external INT)
	jmp	next		; if not 1 jump next
	jmp	top		; acc.3=1 jump top
	ays pr	OC		; delay subroutine
d1:				; d1
	sdz	acc		;
	jmp	d1		;
	ret			;
del	ays en	dp		;
	end			;

#### **Program description**

The program begins (1) by setting up the interrupt control. The external interrupt and timer/counter are enabled and the timer/counter is setup to be

an internal type. Section (2) sets Port A and B to be inputs and Port C to be outputs and clears the high and low order bytes. In (3) the control bits are initially set as follows BUSY=0, ACK=1,  $\overline{OE}=0$ ,  $\overline{WR}=1$  by placing these values on Port C. ACC is then cleared and the program waits for an interrupt to appear. Only when an interrupt occurs will the value of ACC change (4). After an interrupt occurs, the program will jump to the interrupt service routine, and the control lines on port C change to the following: BUSY=1, ACK=1,  $\overline{OE}=1$ ,  $\overline{WR}=1$ . Pin 1 of the printer port  $\overline{STROBE}$  is connected to the external interrupt input INT. So only when a  $\overline{STROBE}$  occurs will the interrupt service routine be run. Before the next  $\overline{STROBE}$  occurs it is necessary to check the condition of the BUSY signal. So all the data transfer must have been completed.

The Printer Port s STROBE signal indicates that there is data ready to be transmitted. In (5) Ports A and B are first setup as outputs and in part (6) the data is placed on these two ports, the low order byte on A and the high order byte on B. The address is then increased by one. At the same time the STROBE signal is setup. After the 74HC374 receives a clock signal the data on pins 2~9 of the printer port will appear on the output pins of the 74HC374. After this the program will activate the WR line (7) to write the data into the SRAM and after a time delay (8) will return to its original inactive value. After this the ACK line is activated (9) to confirm the data transfer and again after a short time delay it returns to its original inactive state. At this point the write cycle is complete. The BUSY signal is now returned to its inactive state (11) permitting further data to be written. When the STROBE signal is received the timer/counter starts counting (10).

At this time the ACC is checked to see if it is zero. Two different events will allow the program to jump out of the program loop (4), these are an external interrupt or an interrupt created by the timer/counter. These two interrupts will affect ACC in different ways. This can be detected by looking at ACC bit 3, as shown in (12). Whether it is an external interrupt or an interrupt due to the timer/counter, both indicate that the data transfer is complete. After this an  $\overline{OE}$  signal will be generated indicating that the SRAM data is valid and available for use by the hardware. The next action is to return Ports A and B from their original condition as output ports to input ports (13). Care has to be taken here to avoid conflicts between the microcontroller address bus and the system bus, which is connected to the same lines. For this reason Ports A and B must be defined as inputs to place them in a high impedance state before the system takes control of the address lines.



Part V Appendix

Part V

# Appendix





# **Reserved Words Used By Assembler**



#### Registers

The following list describes the registers used by the assembler

Register Name	Memory Address	
А	05H	

#### **Instruction Sets**

Instruction		Description
ADC	A,[m]	add the data memory and carry to the accumulator
ADCM	A,[m]	add the accumulator and carry to the data memory
ADD	A,[m]	add the data memory to the accumulator
ADD	A,x	add immediate data to the accumulator
ADDM	A,[m]	add the accumulator to the data memory
AND	A,[m]	logical AND the accumulator with the data memory
AND	A,x	logical AND immediate data to accumulator
ANDM	A,[m]	logical AND the data memory with the accumulator
CALL	addr	subroutine call
CLR	[m]	clear the data memory
CLR	[m].i	clear a bit of the data memory

CLR WDT		clear the watch-dog timer
CLR WDT1		clear the watch dog timer (except 48050)
CLR WI	DT2	clear the watch dog timer (except 48050)
$\operatorname{CPL}$	[m]	complement the data memory
CPLA	[m]	complement the data memory, store the result to the accumulator
DAA	[m]	decimal-adjust accumulator for addition (except 48050)
DEC	[m]	decrement the data memory
DECA	[m]	decrement the data memory, store the result to the accumulator
HALT		enter the power down mode
INC	[m]	increment the data memory
INCA	[m]	increment the data memory, store the result to the accumulator
JMP	addr	direct jump
MOV	A,[m]	move the data memory to the accumulator
MOV	A,x	move an immediate data to the accumulator
MOV	[m],A	move the accumulator to the data memory
NOP		no operation
OR	A,[m]	logical OR the accumulator with the data memory
OR	A,x	logical OR immediate data to the accumulator
ORM	A,[m]	logical OR the data memory with the accumulator
RET		return from the subroutine
RET	A,x	return and place immediate data in the accumulator
RETI		return from interrupt (except 48050)
$\operatorname{RL}$	[m]	rotate data memory left
RLA	[m]	rotate data memory left, save the result to the accmulator
RLC	[m]	rotate data memory left with carry

RLCA	[m]	rotate data memory left with carry, save the result to the accumulator
RR	[m]	rotate data memory right
RRA	[m]	rotate data memory right, save the result to the accmulator
RRC	[m]	rotate data memory right with a carry
RRCA	[m]	rotate data memory right with carry, save the result to the accumulator
SBC	A,[m]	subtract the data memory and carry from the accumulator
SBCM	A,[m]	subtract the data memory and carry from the accumulator, save the result in the data memory
SDZ	[m]	skip if the decrement data memory is zero
SDZA	[m]	decrement the data memory contents, save the result to the accumulator, skip if the result is zero
SET	[m]	set the data memory
SET	[m].i	set a bit of the data memory
SIZ	[m]	skip if the increment data memory is zero
SIZA	[m]	increment te data memory-place the result in the accumulator, and skip if zero
SNZ SUB	[m].i A,[m]	skip if bit i of the data memory is not zero subtract the data memory contents from the accumulator
SUB	A,x	subtract immediate data from the accumulator
SUBM	A,[m]	subtract the data memory contents from the accumulator and save the result to the data memory
SWAP	[m]	swap nibbles within the data memory (except 48050)
SWAPA	[m]	swap the data memory-place, save the reult in the accumulator (except 48050)
SZ	[m]	skip if the data memory is zero
SZ	[m].i	skip if bit i of the data memory is zero
SZA	[m]	move the data memory to the accumulator, skip if zero

TABRDC[m]		move the ROM code (current page) to the TBLH and the data memory (except 48050)
TABRDL [m]		move the ROM code (last page) to the TBLH and the data memory (except 48050)
XOR	A,[m]	logical XOR the accumulator with the data memory
XOR	A,x	logical XOR immediate data to the accumulator
XORM	A,[m]	logical XOR the accumulator with the data memory



Appendix **B** 

## Cross Assembler Error Messages

## B

A0005	Undefined symbol The specified symbol is not defined in this file.
A0010	Unexpected symbol The symbol is redundant.
A0011	Symbol already defined elsewhere Re-defined symbol. HASM does not accept multiple symbol definitions.
A0012	Undefined symbol in EQU directive HASM does not accept undefined symbols to the right of directive EQU, even for forward references.
A0013	Expression syntax error Syntax error in expression.
A0014	HASM internal stack overflow This error is due to HASM processes the expression analysis.
A0016	Duplicated MACRO argument Two formal arguments in the MACRO definition line with the same name.
A0017	Syntax error in MACRO parameters Syntax error in MACRO formal parameters (expression).
A0018	Wrong number of parameters The total number of MACRO formal parameters is not equal to the total number of MACRO actual parameters (reference number is not equal to definition number).

A0019	Redefined EQU The symbol to the left of the directive EQU has been previously defined.
A0020	Multiple section definition The name of the section is the same as previously defined section. The section name must be unique in a source file.
A0021	DBIT can be used in data section only This directive can not be used in the code section.
A0022	DB could be used in data section only This directive can not be used in the code section.
A0024	Syntax error Syntax error in statement.
A0025	MACRO too deep Too many MACRO reference nesting levels. The maximum number of nesting levels is 7 (refer to other MACROs recursively).
A0026	INCLUDE too deep Too many INCLUDE file nesting levels. The maximum number of INCLUDE nesting levels is 7 (include other files recursively).
A0027	IF too deep Too many IF/ENDIF pair nesting levels. The maximum nesting level is 7.
A0028	ELSE without IF No directive IF before the directive ELSE (IF/ELSE/ENDIF pair is unbalanced).
A0029	ELSE after ELSE No directive ENDIF or IF after the directive ELSE. (IF/ELSE/ENDIF pair is unbalanced).
A0030	ENDIF without IF No directive IF before the directive ENDIF (IF/ELSE/ENDIF pair is unbalanced).
A0031	Open conditional The conditional directives pair (IF/IFE/ENDIF) is unbalanced.
A0032	(expected Left parethensis is missing, should be added to the expression.

A0033	ORG overlay The memory address of directive ORG is overlaid with previously defined code.
A0034	Value out of range The specified value exceeds the allowed range.
A0035	RAM-space limit exceeded The total memory size of data sections exceeds the allowed RAM size.
A0036	ROM-space limit exceeded The total memory size of code sections exceeds the allowed ROM size.
A0037	DC could be used in code section only This directive can not be used in the data section.
A0038	End of file encountered in MACRO definition The directive ENDM is missing in the MACRO definition block (unbalanced).
A0039	Constant expected A constant is required in the expression.
A0040	Open procedure A directive ENDP is required to match the previous PROC.
A0041	Block nesting error The block nesting of directive PROC/ENDP is illegal.
A0042	' expected The single quote ' is missing.
A0043	Non-digit in number The number token contains a non-digit character.
A0044	EXTERN needs an identifier There is no identifier specified in the EXTERN directive.
A0045	Data type expected The data type of the identifier should be declared.
A0046	Unknown data type The data type is unknown.
A0047	':' expected The ':' is missing.

A0048	Too many local labels Too many local labels defined. At most 10 local labels are permitted between two labels.
A0049	Redefined Section in ROMBANK is inconsistent A section has already been declared in another ROMBANK directive.
A0050	Bank out of range The bank number specified in the ROMBANK directive exceeds the maximum bank number.
A0051	Section Undefined in ROMBANK directive The directive ROMBANK contains an undefined section name.
A4001	Incorrect command line option The command line option is illegal.
A4002	Redefined symbol The specified symbol is defined already.
A4003	No source file name No source file name in the command line.
A4004	Incorrect command line syntax The command line syntax is illegal.
A4005	Could not find file The specified file is not found.
A4006	No .CHIP directive No directive .CHIP in the source file.
A4007	Bad instruction format file The instruction description file is incorrect.
A4008	HASM internal fatal error HASM failure, please contact dealer.
A4009	Out of memory Not enough memory for HASM to process the source file.

Appendix C

## Cross Linker Error Messages

L1001	No object files specified No object file is specified in the command line or the batch file. Check the command line HLINK syntax, refer to chapter 10.
L1002	Object file filename.obj not found in pass1 The specified object file filename.obj is not found in HLINK pass1. Check if the file (filename.obj) is in the working directory, otherwise contact dealer.
L1003	Out of memory No enough memory space for Cross Linker (HLINK) Check the total system free memory.
L1004	Illegal section address dddd The section address specified in the command line option /ADDR is illegal The address dddd should be in hex. Refer to chapter 10, section 10.2
L1005	Illegal command option 'option' The specified option (option) in the command line is illegal Refer to chapter 10, section 10.2 for legal options.
L1006	Batch file 'lbatch.bat' is not found The specified batch file lbatch.bat is not found Check if the batch file (lbatch.bat) is in the working directory.
L1007	Illegal file name 'filename.obj' The specified file filename.obj contains illegal characters Correct the characters of the file filename.obj

L1008	Command line syntax error The syntax of the command line is incorrect. Please refer to chapter 10, section 10.2 for correct syntax.
L1009	Illegal object file filename.obj The format of the specified object file (filename.obj) is incorrect Check if this object file has been generated by Holtek's Cross Assembler.
L1010	Cannot close object file 'filename.obj' HLINK has failed to close the specified object file (system error) Contact dealer.
L1011	Record 'rec-name' check sum error HLINK found a check sum error in the record 'rec-name' of the specified object file Check if this object file is generated by Cross Assembler (HASM) or not.
L1012	Microcontroller information mismatch file 'filename1.obj' and 'filename2.obj' Two object files with different uC configurations during assembly Ensure the same uC configuration during assembling
L1013	Library file 'libname.lib' does not exist The specified library file libname.lib does not exist or the library file has not been generated by Holtek's Cross Library (HLIB). Check if the library file (libname.lib) is in the working directory.
L1014	Cannot close the library file 'filename.lib' HLINK has failed to close the specified file. Contact dealer.
L1015	Library file 'libname.lib' not found HLINK cannot re-open the specified library file libname.lib while processing the link work Contact dealer.
L1016	Object file 'filename.obj' not found in pass2 The specified object file filename.obj not found in the HLINK pass2 Contact dealer.
L1017	Cannot write the checksum of record 'xx'H HLINK fails to write check sum of record (xxH) to the output file Contact dealer.

L1018	Cannot write data of record 'xx'H HLINK fails to write record (xxH) data to the output file Check the PC file system and working directory or contact dealer.
L1019	Cannot open the debug file 'debugname.dbg' HLINK failed to open the debug file debugname.dbg Check the PC file system and working directory or contact dealer.
L1020	Cannot open the task file 'taskname.tsk' HLINK failed to open the task file taskname.tsk Check the PC file system and working directory or contact dealer.
L1021	Cannot open the map file 'mapname.map' HLINK failed to open the map file mapname.map Check the PC file system and working directory or contact dealer.
L1022	Cannot create the debug file 'debugname.dbg' HLINK failed to create the debug file debugname.tsk Check the PC file system and working directory or contact dealer.
L1023	Cannot create the task file 'taskname.tsk' HLINK fails to create the task file taskname.tsk Check the PC file system and working directory or contact dealer.
L1024	Cannot create the map file 'mapname.map' HLINK fails to create the map file mapname.map Check the PC file system and working directory or contact dealer.
L1025	Program code too large The total size of program code is larger than the uC ROM size Check and Modify the program code (in CODE sections).
L1026	Program data is too large The total size of the program data sections is larger than the $\mu$ C RAM size Check and Modify the DATA sections, omit some data in the RAM.
L1027	Syntax error in batch file 'batch.bat' The command syntax in the batch file is incorrect Refer to chapter 10, Cross Linker for correct syntax

L1028	Cannot close the batch file 'batch.bat' HLINK failed to close the specified batch file Contact dealer
L1031	Public symbols are duplicated Public symbol 'sym1' in module 'mod-name1' Public symbol 'sym1' in module 'mod-name2' HLINK found a symbol named 'sym1' that is declared as a public symbol in both modules, 'mod-name1' and 'mod-name2' Change one public symbol and all external references to this symbol to another name.
L1032	Internal error for File Record HLINK fails to convert the local file index to the global file index Contact dealer.
L1033	Internal error when obtaining the global index HLINK failed to get the global file index Contact dealer.
L1034	Illegal class type for section 'sec-name' in the file 'filename.obj' HLINK found that the class name of section (sec-name) in the file (filename.obj) is illegal (neither CODE nor DATA) Check if the file (filename.obj) is generated by Holtek Cross Assembler (HASM). Otherwise, contact dealer.
L1035	Internal error when section 'sec-name' of the file 'filename.obj' is located HLINK failed to find the section (sec-name) while in section allocation. Contact dealer.
L1036	No free memory for section 'sec-name' of the file 'filename.obj' HLINK failed to find enough ROM or RAM space for the section (sec-name) of the file (filename.obj) while in absolute section allocation. Check if the address and the length of the section (sec-name) of the input file (filename.obj) are outwith the ROM or RAM range. Modify the program or specify a correct starting address for this section.

L1037	Two sections are overlapping Section 'sec-name1' in the file 'filename1.obj' Section 'sec-name2' in the file 'filename2.obj' The ROM or RAM space allocated for the section 'sec-name1' in the file 'filename1.obj' overlaps with the ROM or RAM space of the section 'sec-name2' in the file 'filename2.obj' Check the address and length of these two sections. Refer to the listing file *.lst generated by Cross Assembler (HASM).
L1038	Memory allocation failed for section 'sec-name' in the file 'filename.obj' HLINK fails to find enough ROM or RAM space for the section (sec-name) of the file (filename.obj) while in public section allocation. Check the length of all sections in the input object files. Also, check or modify the align type of some sections to compact the sections space. Otherwise contact dealer.
L1039	Internal error, failed to get SECDEF HLINK internal error Contact dealer.
L1040	Bank number exceeds 8 HLINK found a bank number larger than or equal to 8, maximum is 7 Modify the directive ROMBANK in the source program
L1041	Can't find SECDEF in BNKDEF HLINK failed to find the SECDEF record for a bank member, internal error Contact dealer
L1042	Failed to move the write pointer for task file HLINK internal error Contact dealer
L1043	Illegal Fixupp record in the file 'binary.obj' HLINK internal error Contact dealer.
L2001	Unresolved external symbol 'ext-symbol' in file 'filename.obj' No public symbol named ext-symbol in the file filename.obj has been found in either the input object files or the specified library files. Link the object file that defines a public symbol named ext-symbol into the command line, or include a library file defining a public symbol named ext-symbol.

L2002	Symbol type mismatch Public symbol 'symbol1' in module 'mod-name1' External symbol 'symbol1' in module 'mod-name2' HLINK found that an external symbol and a public symbol have the same name, but have a different symbol type. Check the symbol type of this external symbol, modify the source file, re-assemble the file and re-link.
L3001	Specified section 'sec-name' does not exist The specified section (sec-name) in the command line option /ADDR does not exist Input the correct section name in the command line or ignore this section. This is a warning message, HLINK does the allocation work as if this option has not been issued.
L3002	Specified address 'xxxx' for section 'sec-name' is illegal The specified address of the specified section (sec-name) in the command line option /ADDR is illegal (not a hexadecimal digit or exceeds the legal range) Input the correct address in the command line or ignore this section. This is a warning message, HLINK does the allocation work as if this option has not been issued.

Appendix D

### **Cross Library Error Messages**

# D

U0001 No library file name U0002 Library file does not exist U0003 Library file exists already The contents of the library file will be discarded if operation is U0004 executed U0005 Can't open the library file U0006 Can't create a library file U0007 Can't create a TMP library file U0008 Incorrect library file U0009 Can't open the list file U0010 Can't insert a new module to library U0011 Can't open the object file U0012 Delete operation fails U0013 Replace operation fails U0014 A module with the same name exists in library already In any library file, there cannot exist two modules with the same name. HLIB will check this situation when processing ADD operation

U0015	The module doesn't exist in library The specified module is not in the specified library file. HLIB will check when processing DELETE, REPLACE, EXTRACT operations
U0016	Not enough memory The user system has not enough memory for HLIB
U0017	Bad object file The file to be added to the library file has a bad object format. It may not be generated by HASM or a disk error
U0018	No public name in the specified module qIf a symbol needs to be public, refer to chapter 8, 8.2.3 program directive for PUBLIC directive, and re-assemble the source file, then use HLIB to replace the new object file with the old module
U0019	Illegal operation
U0020	Fail to close a file
U0021	Check sum is incorrect HLIB internal error
U0022	Fail to out record to the library file HLIB internal error
U0023	Out checksum error HLIB internal error
U0024	Fail to seek file HLIB internal error

#### Appendix E

## Holtek Cross C Compiler Error Messages

E

#### **Error Code**

- C1000 Unterminated conditional in # include
- C1001 Unterminated #if/#ifdef/#ifndef
- C1002 Unidentifiable control line
- C1003 Could not find include file *filename*
- C1004 Illegal operator \* or & in #if/#elsif
- C1005 Bad operator (operator) in #if/#elsif
- C1007 #elif with no #if
- C1008 #elif after #else
- C1009 #else with no #if
- C1010 #else after #else
- C1011 #endif with no #if
- C1012 #defined token is not a name
- C1013 #defined token token cannot be redefined
- C1014 Incorrect syntax for defined
- C1015 Bad syntax for control line
- C1016 Preprocessor control control not yet implemented
- C1017 Duplicate macro argument
- C1018 Syntax error in macro parameters
- C1019 Macro redefinition of macro-name
- C1020 Disagreement in number of macro arguments
- C1021 EOF in macro argument list
- C1022  $\$  # not followed by macro parameter
- C1023  $\,$  ## occurs at border of replacement
- C1024 Stringified macro argument is too long

- C1025 Unknown internal macro
- C1026 Unterminated string or char const
- C1027 Undefined expression value
- C1028 Bad ?: in **#if/#endif**
- C1029 Unknown operator in #if
- C1030 Bad number *number* in **#if/#elsif**
- C1031 Empty character constant
- C1032 Syntax error
- C1033 Internal Error in #if/#elsif
- C1034 String in #if/#elsif
- C2001 unrecognized declaration
- C2002 invalid use of auto/register
- C2004 invalid use of specifier
- C2005 invalid type specification
- C2006 invalid use of typedef
- C2007 missing identifier
- C2008 redeclaration of identifier
- C2009 empty declaration
- C2010 invalid storage class
- C2011 redeclaration of *identifier* previously declared at file\_line\_no
- C2012 redefinition of *identifier* previously defined at file\_line\_no
- C2013 illegal initialization for *identifier*
- C2014 undefined size for type identifier
- C2015 extraneous identifier identifier
- C2016 size is an illegal array size
- C2017 illegal formal parameter types
- C2018 missing parameter type
- C2019 expecting an identifier
- C2020 extraneous old-style parameter list
- C2021 illegal initialization for parameter identifier
- C2022 invalid operator field declarations
- C2023 missing operator tag
- C2024 type is an illegal bit-field type
- C2025 *size* is an illegal bit-field size
- C2026 field name missing
- C2027 type is an illegal field type
- C2028 undefined size for field type identifier
- C2029 size of *type* exceeds *number* bytes
- C2030 illegal use of incomplete type type
- C2031 conflicting argument declarations for function *identifier*
- C2032 missing name for parameter number in function identifier

## HOLTEK Appendix E Holtek Cross C Compiler Error Messages

- C2033 undefined size for parameter type identifier
- C2034 declared parameter *identifier* is missing
- C2035 undefined static type identifier
- C2036 undefined label *identifier*
- C2037 expecting an enumerator identifier
- C2038 overflow in value for enumeration constant identifier
- C2039 unknown enumeration identifier
- C2040 type error in argument *number* to *identifier*; found *type1* expected *type2*
- C2041 too many arguments in *identifier*
- C2042 insufficient number of arguments in *identifier*
- C2043 type error in argument number in identifier; type is illegal
- C2044 assignment to const identifier identifier
- C2045 assignment to const location
- C2046 addressable object required
- C2047 operands of *identifier* have illegal types type1 and type2
- C2048 operand of unary operator has illegal type type
- C2049 syntax error; found token1 expecting token2
- C2050 too many errors
- C2051 skipping token
- C2053 invalid operand of unary &; identifier is declared register
- C2054 invalid type argument type to sizeof
- C2055 sizeof applied to a bit field
- C2056 cast from *type1* to *type2* is illegal
- C2057 found type expected a function
- C2058 left operand of . has incompatible type type
- C2059 field name expected
- C2060 left operand of has incompatible type type
- C2061 illegal use of type name type
- C2062 illegal use of argument
- C2063 illegal expression
- C2064 lvalue required
- C2065 unknown field *identifier* of type
- C2066 expression too complicated
- C2067 initializer must be constant
- C2068 cast from type1 to type2 is illegal in constant expressions
- C2069 invalid initialization type; found type1 expected type2
- C2070 cannot initialize undefined type
- C2071 missing { in initialization of *type*
- C2072 too many initializers
- C2072 unclosed comment
- C2073 illegal character@
- 257

- C2074 invalid hexadecimal constant identifier
- C2075 invalid binary constant identifier
- C2076 invalid octal constant identifier
- C2077 missing character
- C2078 *identifier* literal too long
- C2079 missing
- C2080 illegal character character
- C2081 *identifier1* is a preprocessing number but an invalid *identifier2* constant
- C2082 invalid floating constant identifier
- C2083 ill-formed hexadecimal escape sequence
- C2084 integer expression must be constant
- C2085 illegal **break** statement
- C2086 illegal continue statement
- C2087 illegal case label
- C2088 case label must be a constant integer expression
- C2089 illegal **default** label
- C2090 extra **default** label
- C2091 extraneous return value
- C2092 missing label in goto
- C2093 unrecognized statement
- C2094 illegal statement termination
- C2095 redefinition of label *identifier* previously defined at *life\_line\_no*
- C2096 illegal *type* type in **switch** expression
- C2097 duplicate case label value
- C2098 illegal return type; found type1 expected type2
- C2099 type error: pointer expected
- C2100 illegal type array of *type*
- C2101 missing array size
- C2102 type error: array expected
- C2103 illegal type type
- C2104 type error: function expected
- C2105 duplicate field name *identifier* in type
- C2106 illegal initialization of extern identifier
- C2201 insufficient memory
- C2202 read error
- C2206 should specify ROM address



Appendix E Holtek Cross C Compiler Error Messages

#### Warning Code

- C3001 #error directive: error
- C3002 #line specifies number out of range
- C3003 Bad token produced by ##
- C3004 Bad digit in number number
- C3005 EOF inside comment
- C3006 Wide char constant value undefined
- C3007 Unknown preprocessor control control
- C3008 Undefined escape in character constant
- C3009 Multibyte character constant undefined
- C3010 Character constant taken as not signed
- C3011 C preprocessor internal error
- C3012 Illegal option option
- C4001 empty declaration
- C4002 empty input file
- C4003 missing prototype
- C4004 inconsistent linkage for *identifier* previously declared at *file\_line\_no*
- C4005 more than 511 external identifiers
- C4006 declaration of *identifier* does not match previous declaration at  $file\_line\_no$
- C4007 more than 32767 bytes in type
- C4008 register declaration ignored for type identifier
- C4009 extraneous 0-width bit field type identifier ignored
- C4010 more than 127 fields in type
- C4011 more than 31 parameters in function identifier
- C4012 old-style function definition for identifier
- C4013 compatibility of type1 and type2 is compiler dependent
- C4014 identifier is a non-ANSI definition
- C4015 missing return value
- C4016 static type identifier is not referenced
- C4017 parameter type identifier is not referenced
- C4018 local type identifier is not referenced
- C4019 register declaration ignored for type identifier
- C4020 more than 127 enumeration constants in type
- C4021 non-ANSI trailing comma in enumerator list
- C4022 more than 31 arguments in a call to identifier
- C4023 assignment between type1 and type2 is compiler-dependent
- C4024 *identifier* used in a conditional expression
- C4025 unsigned operand of unary -
- C4026 conversion from type1 to type2 is compiler dependent

- C4027 *type* used as an lvalue
- C4028 conversion from type1 to type2 is undefined
- C4029 more than 511 external identifiers
- C4030 initializer exceeds bit-field width
- C4031 missing " in preprocessor line
- C4033 unrecognized control line
- C4034 more than 509 characters in a string literal
- C4035 string/character literal contains non-portable characters
- C4036 excess characters in multibyte character literal token ignored
- C4037 overflow in constant token
- C4039 overflow in hexadecimal escape sequence
- C4040 overflow in octal escape sequence
- C4041 unrecognized character escape sequence character
- $C4042 \quad \text{overflow in constant expression}$
- C4043 result of unsigned comparison is constant
- C4044 shifting a type by *number* bits is undefined
- $C4045 \ \ unreachable \ code$
- C4046 more than 15 levels of nested statements
- C4047 switch statement with no cases
- C4048 more than 257 cases in a switch
- C4049 switch generates a huge table
- C4050 pointer to a parameter/local *identifier* is an illegal return value
- C4051  $\,$  source code specifies an infinite loop
- C4052 more than 127 identifiers declared in a block
- C4053 reference to type elided
- C4054 reference to volatile type elided
- C4055 declaring type array of *type* is undefined
- C4056 qualified function type ignored
- C4057 unnamed operator in prototype

#### **Fatal Code**

- C5000 **#if** too deeply nested
- C5001 Out of memory
- C5002 Illegal -D or -U argument argument
- C5003 Too many macro arguments
- C5004 EOF in string or char constant
- C5005 #**include** too deeply nested
- C5006 Too many -I directives
- C5007 Unable to open input file filename
- C5008 Unable to open output file filename
- C6001 function not supported yet



Appendix E Holtek Cross C Compiler Error Messages

#### Warning Code

- C3001 #error directive: error
- C3002 #line specifies number out of range
- C3003 Bad token produced by ##
- C3004 Bad digit in number number
- C3005 EOF inside comment
- C3006 Wide char constant value undefined
- C3007 Unknown preprocessor control *control*
- C3008 Undefined escape in character constant
- C3009 Multibyte character constant undefined
- C3010 Character constant taken as not signed
- C3011 C preprocessor internal error
- C3012 Illegal option option
- C4001 empty declaration
- C4002 empty input file
- C4003 missing prototype
- C4004 inconsistent linkage for *identifier* previously declared at *file\_line\_no*
- C4005 more than 511 external identifiers
- C4006 declaration of *identifier* does not match previous declaration at  $file\_line\_no$
- C4007 more than 32767 bytes in type
- C4008 register declaration ignored for type identifier
- C4009 extraneous 0-width bit field type identifier ignored
- C4010 more than 127 fields in type
- C4011 more than 31 parameters in function *identifier*
- C4012 old-style function definition for identifier
- C4013 compatibility of type1 and type2 is compiler dependent
- C4014 identifier is a non-ANSI definition
- C4015 missing return value
- C4016 static type identifier is not referenced
- C4017 parameter type identifier is not referenced
- C4018 local type identifier is not referenced
- C4019 register declaration ignored for type identifier
- C4020 more than 127 enumeration constants in type
- C4021 non-ANSI trailing comma in enumerator list
- C4022 more than 31 arguments in a call to identifier
- C4023 assignment between type1 and type2 is compiler-dependent
- C4024 identifier used in a conditional expression
- C4025 unsigned operand of unary -
- C4026 conversion from *type1* to *type2* is compiler dependent
  - 261

- C4027 *type* used as an lvalue
- C4028 conversion from *type1* to *type2* is undefined
- C4029 more than 511 external identifiers
- C4030 initializer exceeds bit-field width
- C4031 missing " in preprocessor line
- C4033 unrecognized control line
- C4034 more than 509 characters in a string literal
- C4035 string/character literal contains non-portable characters
- C4036 excess characters in multibyte character literal token ignored
- C4037 overflow in constant token
- $C4039 \quad overflow \ in \ hexadecimal \ escape \ sequence$
- C4040 overflow in octal escape sequence
- C4041 unrecognized character escape sequence character
- $C4042 \quad overflow \ in \ constant \ expression$
- C4043 result of unsigned comparison is constant
- C4044 shifting a type by *number* bits is undefined
- C4045 unreachable code
- C4046 more than 15 levels of nested statements
- C4047 switch statement with no cases
- C4048 more than 257 cases in a switch
- C4049 switch generates a huge table
- C4050 pointer to a parameter/local identifier is an illegal return value
- C4051  $\,$  source code specifies an infinite loop
- C4052 more than 127 identifiers declared in a block
- C4053 reference to type elided
- C4054 reference to volatile type elided
- C4055 declaring type array of *type* is undefined
- C4056 qualified function type ignored
- C4057 unnamed operator in prototype

#### **Fatal Code**

- C5000 **#if** too deeply nested
- C5001 Out of memory
- C5002 Illegal -D or -U argument argument
- C5003 Too many macro arguments
- C5004 EOF in string or char constant
- C5005 #include too deeply nested
- C5006 Too many -I directives
- C5007 Unable to open input file filename
- C5008 Unable to open output file filename
- C6001 function not supported yet

